



CathexisVision 2019.2 Setup Manual



Contents

Installation Chapter	3
Setup Tab: General Site Setup	25
Setup Tab: Users	35
Setup Tab: Configure Servers	41
Setup Tab: Resources	175
Setup Tab: Site Actions	
Setup Tab: Reports	181
Setup Tab: Configure Failover Servers	203
Setup Tab: Adjacent Camera Mapping	214
CathexisVision GUI Setup	221
CathexisVision Forensic Tool	253
Index	



Installation Chapter

1	Gett	ting started with CathexisVision	4
	1.1	CathexisVision 2019 Release Notice	4
2	Req	uirements/Restrictions	5
	2.1	Supported Operating Systems	5
	2.2	Windows Update Requirements	5
	2.3	Hardware Requirements	6
	2.4	Routing/Port Requirements	7
3	Anti	-Virus Exclusions	9
	3.1	Folders to Exclude from CathexisVision 2018 and Later	9
	3.2	Complete List of Folders to Exclude	9
	3.3	Third-Party Anti-Virus Real Time Scanning on CathexisVision Clients	. 10
4	Insta	allation	. 11
	4.1	Follow the Installation Wizard	. 11
	4.2	Cathexis Windows Performance Wizard	. 12
	4.3	Finish Installation	. 13
	4.4	Log in	. 13
5	Lice	nsing	. 14
	5.1	Trial License	. 14
	5.2	Licensing from a Local Unit	. 14
	5.3	Licensing from a Remote Unit	. 15
6	Crea	ate and Manage Sites	. 17
	6.1	Site Explained	. 17
	6.2	Open the Enterprise Manager	. 17
	6.3	Create and Organise Sites into Folders	. 18
	6.4	Absent Units	. 22
7	The	Site List 'Edit' Menu	. 23
	7.1	Make or Clear a Resources site	. 23
	7.2	Organise Sites into Folders	. 23
	7.3	Highlight Level	.24



1 Getting started with CathexisVision

This document will guide the user through the detailed procedure of installing and configuring the CathexisVision software.¹

Installation of any **CathexisVision** software is simple. It requires one installation file for the NVR and one file for the Client. This is because the software works on a licensing format, so install the whole package, and unlock the features using licenses.

This makes for a very dynamic environment where one can add abilities (such as integrations) by simply updating the license.

The purpose of this chapter is to guide the user through the initial steps of the setup process. These are:

- Installing CathexisVision NVR, and possibly the CathexisVision Client.
- Getting licensed.
- Creating a site with the Enterprise Manager.

Note: It is necessary to install the NVR, and Client software on the respective units, but an administrator can make all relevant changes via either software. I.e., the administrator can make changes to the site from a client, or NVR unit.

1.1 CathexisVision 2019 Release Notice

The following updates have been made in the CathexisVision 2019 software release (please consult the CathexisVision 2019.2 Release Notes for full details):

- CathexisVision 2019 will be the last release to support Windows 32-bit installs.
- All external site connections may now be encrypted (see Section <u>1.2 of Setup Tab: Configure Servers</u> in this document and **Setup Tab → Configure Servers → Server Unit → General** in the software).
- From 2019 onwards, all sites support direct SV connections, which relates to streaming video to Video Walls. The "Allow direct SV connections" setting (Enterprise Manager 🛛 Site Properties) has been removed from the interface.
- The CathexisVision 2019 software now offers a Multi-Camera Archive Player, which allows simultaneous review of multiple archives and enhanced file-browsing. Please see the CathexisVision Archiving Appnote for more.

¹ While Cathexis has made every effort to ensure the accuracy of this document, there is no guarantee of accuracy, neither explicit, nor implied. Specifications are subject to change without notice.



2 Requirements/Restrictions

Please <u>download</u> **CathexisVision** Software to continue with this document, and note that there is a **minimum requirement of 4 Gigabytes of RAM** to run this software.

2.1 Supported Operating Systems

Listed below are the supported operating systems. Supported systems apply to all contents of CathexisVision software install, including:

- 1. CathexisVision software,
- 2. Map Editor,
- 3. Archive Viewer.

2.1.1 <u>Not Supported</u>

The following systems are **not supported**:

- Windows XP and earlier.
- Windows Vista.
- Windows Server 2008.
- Linux Fedora 16 (supported in CathexisVision 2018 and earlier).
- NetBSD.

2.1.2 <u>Supported Linux Systems</u>

- Ubuntu 12.04 LTS Desktop (32-bit).
- Ubuntu 16.04 LTS Desktop (64-bit).

2.1.3 <u>Supported Windows Systems</u>

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 7 SP1.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 8.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 8.1.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 10.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Server 2008 R2 SP1.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Server 2012.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Server 2012 R2.
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Server 2016.

Note: CathexisVision 2019 is the last release to support Windows 32-bit installs.

2.2 Windows Update Requirements

The Universal C Runtime Update is required for certain systems. From CathexisVision 2017 onwards, updated Windows runtime libraries are used. This means that the Windows 10 Universal C Runtime update must be run on systems prior to Windows 10 (see list below).



<u>Note</u>: From CathexisVision 2018.3 onwards, Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 are no longer supported. Thus, the update for 2018.3 does not apply to those systems. Windows Server 2008 R2 is still supported.

This update requirement applies to:

- Windows Server 2012 R2.
- Windows 8.1.
- Windows RT 8.1.
- Windows Server 2012.
- Windows 8.
- Windows RT.
- Windows Server 2008 R2 Service Pack 1 (SP1).
- Windows 7 SP1.

Windows XP and earlier is not supported.

Windows updates can be run, or the specific update KB2999226 may be run. The Windows 10 Universal C Runtime update can be downloaded from: <u>https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2999226</u>.

Running the KB2999226 update has prerequisites, and the user may first need to install:

- Windows Vista Service Pack 2 (download from https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/935791).
- Windows 7 Service Pack 1 (download from http://windows.microsoft.com/installwindows7sp1).
- Windows Server 2008 Service Pack 2 (download from https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/968849).
- Windows Server 2008 R2 Service Pack 1. (downloadfromhttp://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkID=199583).
- Windows RT 8.1, Windows 8.1, and Windows Server 2012 R2 update.
 - KB2919442 (download fromhttps://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2919442).
 - then KB2919355 (download fromhttps://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2919355).

2.3 Hardware Requirements

The **CathexisVision** software architecture is designed to utilise the various hardware system components with maximum efficiency. When choosing hardware, there are many system issues to be taken into consideration. Some examples are:

- Camera resolution.
- Camera bitrates for recording.
- Camera Frame rates and resolution for "live" viewing.
- Video Analytics: Is the I.P camera, or the Cathexis software used to perform Video analytics?
- Whether viewing cameras "live" from the same server on which recording is taking place.
- Whether "multicast" video streams are being streamed from the camera.
- Storage methodology (on-board, Network Storage etc).



2.3.1 <u>Hardware Selection Guidelines</u>

The table below provides guidelines to assist in choosing hardware for the application. The figures in the table were generated using the CathexisVision Design Tool.

Note: the following parameters were used to determine these guidelines:

- 1. These are conservative figures for recording servers only.
- 2. Live viewing not included in these numbers.
- 3. 3MP cameras with 3MP/24fps recording stream.
- 4. CIF/12fps analytics stream running Smart VMD.
- 5. External storage on a 1/10 Gbps network.

<u>Note</u>: These guidelines are not exhaustive. For assistance with the design, contact a distributor or a **Cathexis** regional office. Alternatively, navigate to cathexisvideo.com and use the Design Tool.

Processor	RAM (GB)	Server Storage throughput Mbps	No. of 3MP cameras per server
i7-7700k 4.20GHz	16	600	152
Xeon E3-1290 V2 3.70GHz	16	500	122
Xeon E5-1680 V4 3.40GHz	32	700	187
Xeon E5-2640 V2 2.40GHz	32	650	164
Xeon E5-2695 V3 2.30GHz	32	900	223
Xeon E5-2699 V3 2.30GHZ	32	1000	253

2.4 Routing/Port Requirements

The following information regards the router ports that need to be opened on the network firewall/router/antivirus. These ports are important in allowing several **Cathexis** services to run correctly. Please ensure that these ports are also opened on the anti-virus (if running one).

2.4.1 Ports to Open

Operational Ports	Protocol	Application	Description
80	ТСР	Default CatMobile Access	Port required to allow CatMobile client connection to server.
30010-30100	ТСР	CathexisVision Software	Required ports for access to the CathexisVision software and associated configuration, live, and recorded view, etc.
30014	ТСР	API (CathexisVision 2016 and previous versions) *	Required port to allow API connection to server when using software versions CathexisVision 2016 and previous.

Note: These ports must also be opened on the antivirus, if running one.



			<u>Note</u> : Video also needs to be streamed from the server using TCP port 30010.		
33104	ТСР	API (CathexisVision 2017 and later versions) *	Required port to allow API connection to server when using software versions CathexisVision 2017 and later. <u>Note</u> : Video also needs to be streamed from		
			the server using RTSP on TCP port 554.		
* For full list of API ports, please consult API help guide or contact support@cat.co.za					

Maintenance Ports	Protocol	Application	Description
22	ТСР	Secure Shell (SSH) - Linux	Port required to enable remote access to Linux server using Secure Shell network protocol.
3389	ТСР	Remote Desktop – Windows	Port required to enable remote access to Windows server using Remote Desktop application.
NA	NA	TeamViewer Access	Application for allowing remote access to a Windows server. No port required.

2.4.2 <u>Remote Support</u>

Please download and install one of the following programs relevant to the operating system to ensure remote support is available (see port requirements above).

Linux: Secure Shell (SSH - TCP port 22). Windows: TeamViewer or Remote Desktop.



3 Anti-Virus Exclusions

If running an anti-virus with active or real-time protection scanning enabled, certain CathexisVision folders need to be excluded from anti-virus scanning in order for CathexisVision to run correctly.

The folders which need to be excluded are:

- CathexisVision Server installation folder.
- CathexisVision **Client** installation folder.
- Any folders, drivers, and volumes where **database**/s reside.

Note: All folders and paths referred to below are default installation folders – if the default folder option was not selected during installation, then locate and exclude installation folder/s from anti-virus scanning.

The sections below indicate the default installation folders and paths which need to be excluded from scanning.

3.1 Folders to Exclude from CathexisVision 2018 and Later

For sites running CathexisVision 2018 and later, please exclude the following from anti-virus scanning:

CathexisVision Server	Folders to Exclude		
Cathexis vision Server	32-bit	c:\program files (x86)\CathexisVision Server	
	64-bit	c:\program files\CathexisVision Server	
CathexisVision Client	32-bit	c:\program files\CathexisVision Client	
Database folders/drives/volumes	Please locate and exclude.		

3.2 Complete List of Folders to Exclude

If the system uses a **global anti-virus** (meaning anti-virus protection is applied globally and not to individual units) and the different units in the site may have different installation folders, or if the **installation is prior to CathexisVision 2015**, then simply exclude **all** the default installation folders to avoid hassle.

<u>Note:</u> All folders and paths referred to below are default installation folders – if the default folder option was not selected during installation, then locate and exclude installation folder/s from anti-virus scanning.

	Folders to Exclude	
	c:\program files\Cathexis CathexisVision Suite NVR	
CathexisVision Server	c:\program files (x86)\Cathexis CathexisVision Suite NVR	
	c:\program files\CathexisVision Server	
	c:\program files (x86)\CathexisVision Server	
	c:\dvs	
CathexisVision Client	c:\program files\Cathexis CathexisVision Suite WRV	
	c:\program files (x86)\Cathexis CathexisVision Suite WRV	



	c:\program files\CathexisVision Client	
	c:\program files (x86)\CathexisVision Client	
Database folders/drives/volumes	Please locate and exclude.	

3.3 Third-Party Anti-Virus Real Time Scanning on CathexisVision Clients

On a CathexisVision Client unit, the CathexisVision Server folder needs to be manually excluded from scanning by Windows Defender or other third-party anti-virus real time scanning components.



4 Installation

Installation is simple, and intuitive. Double click the installation file (.msi) to run the setup wizard.

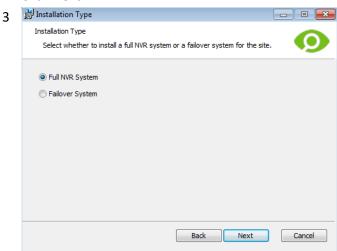


4.1 Follow the Installation Wizard





Click Next.



C:\Program Files\CathexisVision Server\ Change...

Click Next to install to the default folder or click Change to choose another

Accept the End User License Agreement.

Create application shortcuts on the desktop.

Install CathexisVision 2019.01 RC7 Server to:

😸 CathexisVision 2019.01_RC7 Server Setup

Destination Folder

4

Choose the installation folder (this is best left as

Back

Next

 NVR System and a Failover System installation.
 it is.)

 5
 CathexisVision 2019.01_RC7 Server Setup

 Ready to install CathexisVision 2019.01_RC7 Server
 Click

 Click Install to begin the installation. Click Back to review or change any of your installation settings. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.
 Click

The user will be prompted to choose between a Full

Click **Install**, and when the installation is complete, click **Finish**.

- - -

Cancel



4.1.1.1 Failover Installation

If choosing the Failover installation, attempting to run **CathexisVision** (by double clicking on the **CathexisVision** icon) will bring up the dialogue box to the right:



<u>Note</u>: There is detailed information about Failover in the Setup section of this manual.

4.2 Cathexis Windows Performance Wizard

Leave the **Launch Performance Wizard** box ticked. The Performance Wizard optimizes several Windows system settings for the use of **CathexisVision** software. While it should be run immediately, it may be run any time after installation.

Velcome			
Welcome to the Cathexis perf	ormance optimisation wiza		
WARMING. These settings in	ay allect other applications	s and ayatem functi	ondity.
WARNING, mese settings in	ау алест опна аррісацон	and system function	onaity.

The installer will show the current state of each setting. It presents the following options:

Disable DOS 8.3 filenames on NTFS partitions. This is a required setting for using the database engine.	Required
Disable the Last Access timestamp on NTFS partitions. This provides a small performance gain when accessing large volumes of files.	Recommended
Enable the High-Performance power management scheme. This adjusts power settings to allow the best performance of the system.	Recommended
Disable the Windows Defender service. This isn't required but provides a small performance gain over a secured system.	Optional
Disable the Windows Search Indexing service. Provides a significant performance gain by preventing background indexing of the file system.	Recommended
Disable the Windows Desktop Manager Service. Will disable the Aero desktop and appearance enhancements to reduce graphics system load.	Optional



4.3 Finish Installation

Once finished with the Performance Wizard, click finish and installation is complete. If there are any client stations, the user can install the **CathexisVision Client** software on them.

4.4 Log in

After installing, open the software and log in with the default login details.

🛃 Login	? 💌	Default Log	in Details
🐣 Login		Username:	admin
		Password:	admin
Name			
Password			
ОК	Cancel		



5 Licensing

The mode of licensing will depend on whether the license task is being performed on the local unit (the unit currently being worked on), or a remote unit (this being a viewing unit onto which a copy of the software has been installed). This section provides a guide for each situation.

For details on the licensing structure of CathexisVision, please consult the Software Product Description and License Document, or contact <u>support@cat.co.za</u>.

5.1 Trial License

Once CathexisVision is installed, a trial license is automatically applied to the system. To license the system further, consult the relevant licensing sub-section. Features of the trial license include:

- Two permanent IP camera licenses.
- Maximum recording review time of two days.
- Standard CathexisVision basic analytics.

Trial licenses to unlock additional features may be requested by emailing support@cat.co.za.

5.1.1 <u>Recording Review Time</u>

With a trial license applied, only two days (48-hours) of recordings may be reviewed at a time. The camera will continue to record to database (provided there is space, the cameras have the requisite bitrates, etc.), but review of the recordings will be restricted to two days (48-hours) from the point of review. Apply the relevant licenses to unlock the database and review all recordings for as far back as the database has recorded.

5.2 Licensing from a Local Unit

The following instructions describe the process for licensing the unit that is **currently being worked on**. To license a **remote unit**, see the next section (<u>Licensing from a Remote Unit</u>).

5.2.1 Internet Connection: Product Key

If there is internet access and the vendor supplied a product key, enter the product key. The system will connect to the online licensing system and complete the process.

5.2.2 <u>No Internet Connection: Pack File</u>

If there is no internet access on the unit, a **.pack** file will need to be uploaded. A pack file is a file that contains all the licensing information for a unit. Send a **.rqst** file to <u>support@cat.co.za</u>, who will then return a **.pack** file. To receive the **.pack** file, please follow the instructions below.



5.2.2.1 License Request File

A .rqst file must be retrieved from the unit that needs to be licensed.

Tools Settings He	Please select a task	Ite INVRGBa9B
. 🕵 Sherlock	Auto update this unit's license	57/105942505 (Salkebridskie ar geb
	License this unit using a product key	
	Retrieve a license .rqst file from this unit	
	Outpload a license .pack file to this unit	
	Advanced options	

Email this .rqst file to support, along with the information relevant to the licenses to be added to this unit.

5.2.2.2 Upload .pack File

() License using a license pack		Browse	
License using a license pack	C:/unisa/lic.NVR9bb4a258	Browse	

The site should now be licensed. For further assistance, contact <u>support@cat.co.za</u>.

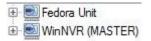
5.3 Licensing from a Remote Unit

When licensing from a remote unit (i.e. licensing a unit that is not the unit being worked on), the procedure is different. This is because clicking **Tools** \rightarrow **Licensing** will license the unit currently logged in. To license remotely, do the following:

5.3.1 Open Configure Servers

To open **Configure Servers**, of the site currently logged into, follow this path from the menu bar: Site \rightarrow Open Tab \rightarrow Setup.

Once in the setup tab click on the **Configure Servers** icon



Once **Configure Servers** is open, right-click on the individual unit that needs to be licensed and select **Licensing** from the drop-down menu.





- O Upload a license .pack file to this unit
- Advanced options

After this the licensing procedure is the same as following **Tools** \rightarrow **Licensing** in the GUI of the local machine.

The options on the left will be presented. This unit may be **Auto-updated** if it has already been licensed, or use a **Product Key** if one was provided.

To request a license, follow the procedure detailed above in the <u>No Internet Connection</u> section.

Note: Save the **.rqst** files, and upload **.pack** files to the storage media attached to the unit processing the license, not the one that is being licensed.



6 Create and Manage Sites

6.1 Site Explained

A **Site** brings multiple NVRs under a single software space, with one unit acting as a **Master**, and the rest considered **Slaves**. Connection to a site is via a site Master unit; this is the address to enter in the **Enterprise Manager** of the GUI.

Note:

- A server may not be a member of more than one site.
- When the CathexisVision server software is installed, the unit is automatically added to its own site.
- Therefore, when a site is located on a single, local unit, a new site does not have to be added.
- Units are added to a site. Cameras and Integrated Devices are added to the NVRs.

6.1.1 What does it mean to add a Site?

It is important to understand that adding a site in the Enterprise Manager (dealt with below) is simply **adding a connection to an already existing site**.

This means that the only information that is contained in the **Enterprise Manager** is the name of the site, and the information the software needs to connect to that site.

<u>Note</u>: All edits to the site (addition of units, editing of individual NVRs, etc.) take place in **Site Menu** \rightarrow **Open Tab** \rightarrow **Setup** \rightarrow **Servers.**

6.1.2 What is a Master Unit?

The first unit added to a new site will be considered the site **Master**. The master unit is the resource database for the site. It contains all the information relevant to the resources of that site.

Any server that forms part of the site can become a **Master** by assigning it the same IP address as the **Master**. This is because an exact copy of the site resource information gets stored on each server. This will help with failover **if** the Master unit goes down.

To make another unit the site master, change the IP addresses of the units (i.e. change the new master's IP address to that of the old master unit).

6.2 Open the Enterprise Manager

CathexisVision site management collects multiple units together as a Site. Sites are created and managed from the Enterprise Manager. Only administrators have access to the Enterprise Manager. Open CathexisVision and login when prompted. To open the Enterprise Manager:



File	Edit Vi	ew	Tools	Settin
	Open sit	e		•
僦	Enterpris	e m	anager	

Follow the path **File → Enterprise Manager**.

This will open a tab entitled **Site** List. This is the tab where sites are added and managed.

6.3 Create and Organise Sites into Folders

File Edit View Tools Setting	ıs Help				
🕵 Site list 🛛 🕱 📄 catcenturion	nsecurity 👷 🕵 ca	tcenturionsecurity	22		
Site	Connection type	Target	Route	Priority	Route connections via site master
Catcenturionsecurity	Ethernet	192.168.71.145 -		0	Yes

The Site list is in the panel on the left, in the above image. When clicking on a site, the sites connection details are displayed in the panel on the right. **There are three steps** when adding a new connection to a new site:

- 1. Add a Site Name.
- 2. Add a connection to that site.
- 3. Fetch the ID of that site.

6.3.1 Add a Site Name

Here, the name of the site is added to the Site List. There are two ways to add a new site:

- Right-click on any whitespace in the Site list panel, and click ⁶ New site
 - Edit View To
- In the Menu Bar, click on Edit → New Site.

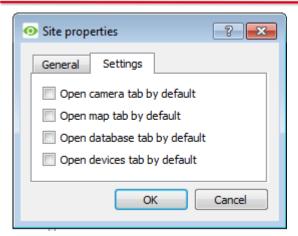
Both of these options will bring up the **Site Properties** menu.

9	Site prope	erties 🔋 💌
	General	Settings
	Site name	SITE NAME
	Site ID	
		OK Cancel

Under **General**, give the site a descriptive name.

Leave Site **ID blank** for now; this will be Fetched after adding a site connection.





Under **Settings**, choose which tabs open when a site is opened (Cameras, Maps, Database etc.).

If the site is connected to a Gateway, there will be an **Access tab**. Here, specify Gateway User Levels.

6.3.1.1 Add a Connection to the Site

Here, add the information needed to connect the client to the Master unit of the site. Select the Site, then rightclick in the right-hand panel, where there will be a column entitled **Connection Type**. Click on

Kew connection. This will bring up the Connection Properties menu:

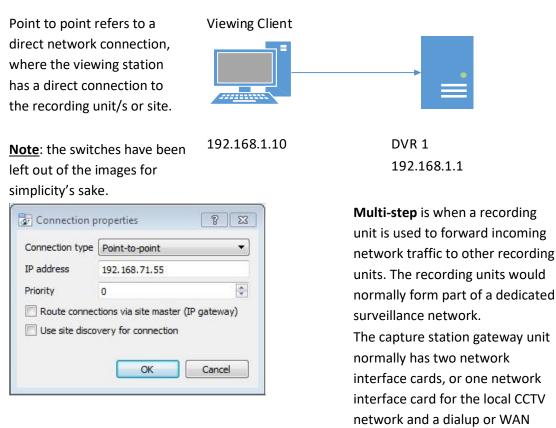
Connection type	Point-to-point	
P address	192.168.71.55	
Priority	0	3
Route conne	ctions via site master (IP gate	way)

<u>Note</u>: One is **not** creating or editing a site here. The connection is being added to the Master unit of an **already** existing site.



Type

The connections methods used to connect the site. There are two connection types. Point to Connection Point, and Multi-step. They will be described below.



connection.

In the screen capture above, the client is connecting to the 192.168.71.55 unit, via the 192.168.71.0 unit. In other words, the target is the reached, and the via unit is the entrypoint to the site network.

IP Address This is simply the IP address of the master unit.

Priority When there are multiple possible methods to access a site, add these methods as separate individual connections. In the image, there are two connections. A connection with a Local address (192...), and another one with a dyndns address.

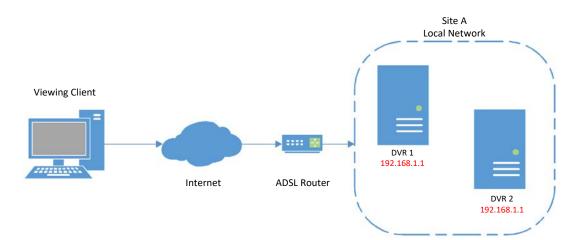
> These both direct the client to the same site. The 192... address is accessible only via the LAN, and the dnydns gives access from outside of the LAN (over the internet, for instance).

Connection type	Target	Route	Priority	Route connections via site master
Ethernet	192.168.XX.XX	-	1	No
Ethernet	YourSitesName.dyndns.org	-	0	Yes

The Priority determines the order that the client will attempt to make a connection via. The higher the number the higher the priority. (The connection with a priority of 1 will be tried before the connection with a 0 priority.) This way, queue up connection methods without having to select them each time connection takes place, and be assured that the higher quality connection will always be prioritised.



Route Connections via site master (IP Gateway) Enable this tick box to make a connection to Site A from outside the local Network. The router also needs to be configured to route the inbound client connection to the Site Master DVR unit. This is to ensure that the client software makes a direct site master connection via the Internet or ADSL IP address.



Use site discovery for connection

This is a mechanism which enables the client viewer to discover the IP address of the site master. This means that if the IP address of the site master changes, the client will be able to rediscover the IP address and not lose its connection.

Important Note: If there is a failover system setup (see the Failover section of this manual), this option must be checked, in order to be able to access the site via the client in the event that the **site master** is failed over.

Connection Type	Gateway	Information required
Ethernet	Point-to- Point	 Target unit IP Address Ethernet specs (is it Internet, WAN, 10MB LAN, 100MB LAN, or 1GB
		LAN ?)IP gateway connection mechanism (if necessary – refer to IT dept).
	Multi-step	 Target unit IP Address Target via unit IP Address
		 Ethernet specs (is it Internet, WAN, 10MB LAN, 100MB LAN, or 1GB LAN ?) IP gateway connection mechanism (if necessary – refer to IT dept.)



6.3.1.2 Fetch Site ID

Delete site	Right-click on Site Name, and click Fetch Site ID:					
New site	Fetch Site ID ? × Fetch Site ID ? ×					
Open site	Connecting Site ID updated					
Open site setup	Cancel					
Fetch site ID						

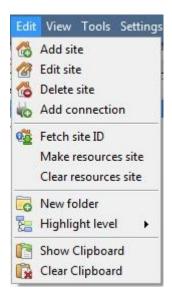
This tests the connection and retrieves important information about the site from the master unit of that site. Once this is done, connect to the site via **File** \rightarrow **Site** \rightarrow **Your_Site_Name.** Each site should have a unique site ID. The site ID is generated automatically when loading the NVR software.

6.4 Absent Units

A unit will be marked absent within a site if it does not connect for four or more weeks. This is important to note as any licenses that are tied to the unit will not be available to the site once that unit is marked absent. This may cause problems if other units rely on the absent unit /s for licenses.



7 The Site List 'Edit' Menu



While in the **Enterprise Manager tab**, the '**Edit**' menu option will appear in the menu bar, as seen to the left.

Achieve everything covered so far (Adding a site etc.) via the **Edit menu**, as opposed to using the right-click options.

There are a few options that haven't been examined in the initial addition stages, which present changes that can be made to the site at a later stage. These are briefly discussed below.

7.1 Make or Clear a Resources site

If there is a Video Wall attached to this site, it may be desirable for the Control Room operators to have control over what the Video Wall screens display. On the units that will be controlling the Video Wall, make the site a resources site.

Make resources site Clear resources site To give control, select the relevant site and click on **Make Resources Site**; to remove CTRL- click on **Clear Resources Site**.

<u>Note</u>: Control of the Video Wall will be via a Monitors Setup Tab that will appear in the **CathexisVision** GUI when the site is open. For more information about this, consult the Monitors section of the Configure Servers document.

7.2 Organise Sites into Folders

Organise sites into folders by either right-clicking in the site list area, or Edit \rightarrow

New Folder. This will bring up the following box.

0 57

General	
Folder name	Example Folder

Enter a relevant name for the folder and click OK.

Once this is done, click-and-drag individual sites in/out of the folder. Now, under **File** \rightarrow **Open Site** there will be a folder, containing the sites:

🙆 Open site 🔹 🕨	Example Folder	A catcenturionsecurity
🕵 Enterprise manager	T	
Archive viewer		My Site



7.3 Highlight Level

Highlight Level is relevant to a site that has its **Alarms** sent via an **Alarm Management Gateway.** It will have an access property where only users with certain access rights are allowed to respond to certain sites. This feature allows users to highlight only those sites that are accessible to certain levels.

Note: This will only highlight the sites in the Site List within the Enterprise Manager



Setup Tab: General Site Setup

1	Intro	oduction	. 26
	1.1	Setup Tab Access Rights	27
2	Gen	eral Site Setup	. 28
	2.1	Configure Archiving	. 29
	2.2	A Note on Multicast	33



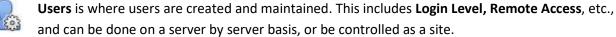
1 Introduction

All server setups in the **CathexisVision** software are centralised under the **Setup Tab**. When a site is open, the **Setup Tab** is accessed via $Site \rightarrow Open Tab \rightarrow Setup$. Within the setup tab, there is a list of setup option icons on the left, and the setup panel on the right, of whichever icon selected. In the image below, the icon highlighted in blue (**General Setup**) has been selected, and all related settings are visible in the panel on the right.

	General site s	setup		
	Site name Offline access level Default access level Site contact Network Multicast addresses Use site passwor Hide failed camer Configure archiving	Password required		
admin	n (Administrator)	🧭 CathexisVision Premium	Supplied by Cathexis	Apply



General Site Setup will contain information that is general to the entire sit, such as the Network Speed, Default access level, and Site contact.





Configure Servers is where changes are made to the individual units that comprise the site. Anything that happens on a unit via CathexisVision can be changed here, from any access point on the site.

Note: Since sites are made up of individual units, which have their own resources, this is a very important section and the bulk of Site editions will happen here.



	1
	Resources Panel. Here, control which resources are visible to operators, in the
135 <u>8</u> 3	resources panel that occupies the right-hand side of the Cameras Tab. Organise
	resources into folders, and repeat resources across folders. The following are all
	set on a unit by unit basis.
	Cameras
	Algorithms
	Databases
	- 🔠 Schedules
	I/O devices
	Scheduled recordings
	Scheduled archives
	57 Events
	Monitors
	Technical alams Control of the second seco
	2. Keyboards
	Integration devices
	Advanced
	- Outputs
	O Inputs
	Site Actions are actions that apply to the site as a whole. Events, and Event
6	Actions relate to resources on individual units. Site Actions are actions that can
	be applied on any unit on the site.
	Reports. CathexisVision can draw complex reports on the state of the hardware
	and software resources of the site. These reports can be based on user created
	templates, and can be run on a schedule.
	Failover. CathexisVision offers the ability to install failover servers, which can be
	managed from this section.
	Adjacent Camera Mapping. The adjacent cameras feature allows the spatial
T	relationship between cameras on a site to be defined and used as a means of
	swiftly navigating between cameras based on a camera's physical position.

1.1 Setup Tab Access Rights

The ability to open the Setup Tab (and thus access server setups such as user configuration, events, video analytics etc.) is restricted to administrator users only. All other user logins, regardless of access rights or level, are unable to access this tab, thus preventing any operator from being able to change site configurations.

Note: An exception is made for non-admin users who have been given the right to configure other non-admin users. These users will only be able to enter the Configure Users section of the Setup tab. No other part of the system setup will be available or visible to them.



2 General Site Setup

General Site Setup² deals with information retrieved from the site, not the local unit being worked on. The site information will be stored on the unit called the site **Master**.

An exact copy of the site resource information gets stored, and updated on each unit that forms part of the Site. This will help with failover if the Master Unit goes down. Any unit that forms part of the Site can become a temporary Master by assigning a "Slave" Unit the same IP address as the failed Master. Contact support for more details.

General site setup					
Site name	SiteName				
Offline access level	1				
Default access level	Password required 🗦				
Site contact	No contact 👻) 摿			
Network	312500kb 🚖	1 Gb LAN 🔻			
Multicast addresses	default	6			
✓ Use site passwords					
Hide failed cameras in resource panel					
Configure archiving					

Site name is the name of the Site as a whole, held in the site database.

Note: that this is not the same as the site name given in the local systems site list.

Offline Access Level defines what someone, who has connected to the site, can see of the site in its OFFLINE state. Although this user cannot interact with the resources themselves, this defines what resources the user can see in the Resource panel.

Options are "No view", and levels 1 to 30.

Default Access Level applies to what a person can see and do on a site in its ONLINE state. If set to password required, then the user will have to enter a username and password, and the access level will be whatever level has been assigned to that user.

² This was called Global Resources in previous versions of the software.
 005-20200528-250
 28 May 2020



Note: If the level is set at anything from 1- 30, when the site is opened, it will default to this level without a password required. This also means that the session will not be logged as a specific user. So, to have audit trails for every session, set this to password required.

Site Contact is the default site contact. This is especially important for monitoring, where an external viewer needs to contact a local responsible person.

To set a site contact, click the ¹¹ icon. Then select an existing contact, or create a new one.

Network settings are those settings specific to the LAN.

Multicast. This will define the multicast settings for the site as a whole (this is discussed in more depth below this table).

Site Passwords, if checked, will propagate all users on the Site Master Unit to all units on the site. This centralises control of users to the master unit. <u>This is the recommended setting.</u>

If left unchecked, users will be defined on a unit by unit basis.

It is best to **enable this only after** all relevant users are set up on the Master Unit, and there aren't any users needed to be stored on other units. This is because **setting site passwords will delete all users on non-Master units** and replace them with the user list on the Site Master computer.

Hide Failed Cameras in Resource Panel will remove cameras that have failed from the Resources list, until they are running again.

2.1 Configure Archiving

This section will describe how to create archive profiles, set user levels, password protection, and assign watermarks.

Please note the following security enhancements made to the archiving process:

- Overall archive signature is retained.
- Critical portions of video/audio are now also independently signed and can be explicitly linked to the source NVR.
- Added extra audit logging regarding an archiving client on each NVR sourcing data for an archive.
- Provide more detailed breakdown in the archive viewer of the verification result.



2.1.1 <u>Overview</u>

Archive profile		
Name	 ^	1
Profile 1		
Profile 2		
Profile 3		

2.1.2 <u>Configure watermarks</u>

The process for creating archive profiles is:

1. Configure watermarks.

2. Click **New** to create profiles and assign the watermark/s to profile/s.

3. **Configure access levels** for each profile, including the ability to archive, set password requirement, and default watermarks.

4. Click OK to save.

Click Configure watermarks to bring up

to bring up the window below.

Name	Text 🕲
Watermark 1	Your Company Name
Watermark 2	Test Mark
Watermark 3	Level 3 User

Once watermark profiles are created, they will appear in this list. Click to customise which columns are seen in this window. Click New to create a new watermark profile. Profile name Display text To create a new watermark profile. Type the watermark text. To edit an existing watermark profile, select it from the list and click Edit to bring up the same window as above.

When done with creating all profiles, click **Ok**.



2.1.2.1 Create new Archiving Profiles

In the Archive profile configuration, click

assword options			
Custom			
Fixed			
Random			
Require passwo	ord prote	ction	
et the available w	atermark	profiles	
Watermark 1			
Watermark 2			
Watermark 3			

to create a new profile.

Give the archiving profile a **Name**.

New

Ticking Allow archives to be exported will allow archived footage to be exported in different file formats from within the archive viewer.

Set **Password options**: Allow profiles the ability to add password requirements when creating archives. Please see below for an explanation.

Ticking Require password protection will force a user to set at least one of the password options allocated to him/her. If it is unticked, the user will be presented with the additional option of not adding a password to the archive.

Set the available watermark profiles:

If watermark profiles are created already, they will be available here. Highlight the watermark/s to attach to this profile. If multiple watermarks are selected for a profile, the operator will be able to choose between them when archiving.

2.1.2.2 Password Options

Site administrators may give operators the ability to add password requirements to archives when creating archives; these password requirements will have to be met by all users wishing to review the archive in the archive viewer.

Password op Custom Fixed Randor	
Custom:	The operator will be able to create a custom password by typing it into the space
Fixed:	The operator must add a Preset password to the archive. Create this password by typing it into the white box next to the Fixed option.
Random:	A random password will be generated by the system in the archive window. The operator will need to make note of it.



2.1.2.2.1 Single/Multiple Password Options:

One may assign multiple password options to archive profiles. At the time of archive, the operator will select from a drop-down menu the single/multiple password options that have been constrained in this section. If no password options have been set, the drop-down menu will offer 'None' as a password option.

Ticking Require password protection when creating an archive will force a user to set at least one of the password options allocated him/her. If it is unticked, the user will be presented with the additional option of not adding a password to the archive.

These password options will be displayed to the user in the archive window. Please note that the examples below both have multiple password options set.

Require password protection.

Require password protection

Password	Custom 🔻	
Suppo	Custom	
	Fixed	
	Random	

The operator must select a password requirement from the options set by the administrator.

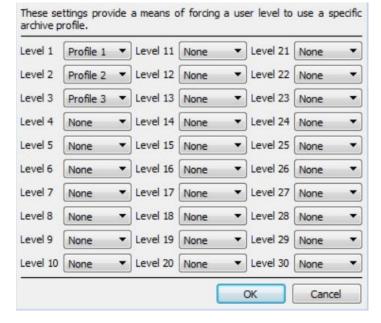
The operator has the added option of not adding a password.

Does not require password protection

Require password protection

Password	None 🔻	
Suppo	None Custom Fixed Random	

2.1.2.3 Configure Access Levels



These settings assign user levels to specific archive profiles. This means that whatever settings applied to archive profiles above, will be applied to the assigned user level when the user archives footage.

Simply select the desired archive profile from the drop-down menu next to each user level.

One may only assign one profile to each level.



2.2 A Note on Multicast

CathexisVision has the ability to automatically assign multicast addresses to cameras. When a camera is added to a unit, select to have multicast 'disabled', 'automatic', or 'enabled'.

The multicast settings that are in General Site Setup define the parameters of the 'automatic' settings.

A Multicast Address consists of two components:

- 1. The **multicast group** is the IP address that the camera will send multicast packets to.
- 2. The **Port Number** is the port number associated with the multicast group.

Users/units inform the network that they want to receive packets from this Address (this is called joining the group). The multicast switch/router will then forward packets sent to this Address to those units who join the group.

Address #	Multicast Group IP	Base Port	The address must be unique, not the individual
1	255.10.0.0	21000	components.
2	255.10.0.0	21002	

Multicast addresses		Base Multicast Group:	This is the first IP address in the multicast range.
Configure multicast addresse	es for the site 📒	•	
Base multicast group	225.10.0.0	Number of	This is the number of group IPs available.
Number of multicast groups	64	Multicast Groups:	
Base port	21000	Base Port:	This is the first port in the range of ports
	1.17.19.2		that will be used for multicast addresses.
Number of ports	1000		
Number of addresses per unit	64 🚖		
Restore default settings		Number of Ports:	This is the number of ports that will be
			used.
ОК	Cancel	Number of	This is the number of unique Multicast
		Addresses per Unit:	Addresses that each individual unit may
		-	use/assign multicast sources.

Note:

- In most cases the default settings will work. The only person who should be changing such settings should be someone with the relevant networking expertise. Nevertheless, these settings can be changed and this is desirable if:
 - a. There are multiple sites on the same network (one would need to make sure that the ranges don't overlap at all, i.e. the same address: port pair may not exist in both the ranges), or
 - b. There are other devices which conflict with either the addresses or ports in the range.



2. Changing these settings will require every unit in the site to be restarted because the device multicast settings are reserved once they have been used.



Setup Tab: Users

1	Up	date Notice	.36
2	Int	roduction	.37
2	2.1	Create New User	.37
2	2.2	LDAP	.38



1 Update Notice

From version 2017, CathexisVision has a new user management system, which replaces that found in earlier versions of the software. Previously there were 2 modes of operation:

- server-based users where every server had its own set of users,
- site-based users.

Now all users are site-based, which means that the configured users and their access rights will be applied to all servers on the site. The old user database will automatically be converted to the new format. Please note the following regarding the conversion process:

- For old systems using server-based users, the users on the master will become the new site users.
- The concept of unit groups has been deprecated and is no longer presented for CathexisVision 2017 systems. This feature will still be supported for sites running connections to earlier software versions.
- When connecting to older systems, the original user management interface will still be used.



2 Introduction

User					2
Name	Access leve	Languac	Show all resource	Remote acce	Change own
🚨 admin	Administrator	English	\checkmark	\checkmark	0
Level 1	Level 1	English	0	×	×
Level 10	Level 10	English	\checkmark	\checkmark	\checkmark
💁 Level 2	Level 2	English	\checkmark	×	×
Level 20	Level 20	English	\checkmark	\checkmark	0
Level 3	Level 3	English	Image: A start of the start	×	×
Level 4	Level 4	English	\checkmark	*	*
💁 Level 5	Level 5	Portugu.	. 🤣	×	*
Level 6	Level 6	Arabic	\checkmark	×	*
Level 7	Level 7	Dutch	1	×	×
<					
<u><</u>					
The second se	Edit Dele	120000	LDAP		10

2.1 Create New User

To create a new user, click at the bottom of the screen or right-click anywhere in the Users area and select **New**...

Q

🕖 New u	Iser		×
New user Enter us	er details		
User			
Level	Level 1	•	
Language	English	+	
Password			
Remo	all resources e access e own password	đ	
	OK	Car	ncel

Give the new user a **User name**. Select the user **Level** from the drop-down menu. Select the user's **Language** from the drop-down menu. Set the user **password**.

The user will have to enter the **username** and **password** set here to enter the CathexisVision software.

Uncheck these options to determine whether it is possible to:

- Show all resources
 Remote access
 Change own password
- See all site resources. Remotely access sites. Change own **password**.



Note:

- In order for Users, and their access levels to be effective the relevant access level settings need to have been set under Setup Tab → Configure Servers → Access rights. (For more information on this, see Configure Servers.)
- 2. One cannot edit a user's name once that user has been created, but all other fields can be edited.

2.2 LDAP

CathexisVision now supports the importing of users from LDAP into CathexisVision. LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) is a protocol used to communicate with user management systems like Microsoft's Active Directory.

Please note:

- 1. LDAP is only available on Pro and Premium sites.
- 2. LDAP users cannot use mobile I/O.
- 3. LDAP users cannot use the API.
- 4.

New	Edit	Delete	LDAP
A PERSON AND A PER			1.4.5.5.0.0.7.4.5.1.1.

To configure LDAP settings, click the **LDAP button** at the bottom of the Configure Users screen.

2.2.1 LDAP Settings

Enable LDAP use	rs
Domain	
Port	389
Use SSL	
Root search dire	۲
Search filter	
Name attribute	
Default access le	Import as disabled user
Login	
Password	

to use transport layer security.

Check	Enable LDAP users	to enable LDAP
import.		

Enter the **Domain name** of the LDAP Server.

<u>Note</u>: The NVR must be able to resolve the IP address of the LDAP server.

- It may be necessary to edit the /etc/hosts file on Linux to ensure that the hostname can be resolved.
- On Windows, edit the file %SystemRoot%\System32\drivers\etc\h osts.

Enter the Port number of the LDAP server.

Check 🔽 Use SSL



2.2.1.1 Valid SSL Certificate

SSL will not work if a valid SSL certificate is not installed. This certificate should be imported as a trusted certificate on the NVR.

2.2.1.1.1 Windows

Import certificates using the Microsoft Management Console certificate plugin. Enter mmc in command prompt to open application. Windows requires the certificate in **.crt** format.

2.2.1.1.2 Ubuntu

- 1. Copy the certificate to /usr/share/ca-certificates/ldap.
- 2. To trust the certificate use:

Sudo dpkg-reconfigure ca-certificates.

2.2.1.1.3 Fedora

SSL on Fedora requires a certificate in **.pem** format.

- 1. Copy the certificate to /etc/ssl/cert
- 2. Run /usr/nvr/3rdparty/libopenssl/bin/c_rehash /etc/ssl/certs

Enter the **<u>Root search directory</u>** location in which users will be searched for.

The **<u>Search filter</u>** must be carefully constructed to ensure the correct users are imported.

• To import users:

(&(objectCategory=person) (objectClass=user))

• To import only enabled users from Active Directory (this will only work in Active Directory):

(&(objectCategory=person)(objectClass=user)(!(userAccountControl:1.2.840.113556.1.4.803:=2)))

Enter the **<u>Name attribute</u>** as unique values in order for users to be identified in the NVR. It is recommended to use:

- **sAMAccountName** for active directory
- **uid** for openIdap slapd.

Set the **Default access level** which will be assigned to all users imported through LDAP. This can be changed later.

Enter the Login and Password details of the user with access rights to search the directory.

2.3 Non-Admin Users with Access Rights to Configure Users

Non-admin users may create and modify other non-admin users if their user level is equipped with this access right. This access right is configured per user level in **Setup Tab**-**Configure Servers**-**Access Rights**-**General**



Tab→Configure Users. Please see the Access Rights section of the Configure Servers chapter in this document for details on configuring this access right.

Users with this ability **will be able to**:

- Enter the Setup tab to configure Users, however no other setup will be available or visible to that user.
- Create and modify other non-admin users.
- Change their own password.

They will not be able to:

- Access any part of the system setup other than the user configuration section.
- Will not be able to delete themselves.
- Will not be able to create admin users.

Will not be able to import LDAP users.



-

Setup Tab: Configure Servers

1	Con	figure Servers 🥮	44
-	1.1	Server Options	44
	1.2	General Tab	47
-	1.3	Email Tab	49
	1.4	Audio Tab	49
	1.5	Communications Tab	50
	1.6	Gateway Tab	. 50
	1.7	Configuration Backup Tab	51
	1.8	Base-Stations Tab	. 52
	1.9	User Recordings Tab	. 53
2	Cam	eras · 😑 Cameras	54
	2.1	Secure Camera Connection and Control	. 54
	2.2	Adding Cameras	. 55
	2.3	Edit Existing Camera	70
	2.4	Right-click on a Camera	75
	2.5	Video Analytics Button	75
	2.6	Reference Images	76
3	Vide	eo Analytics 🛞	80
	3.1	Accessing Video Analytics	80
	3.2	Copy-Paste Analytics	81
	3.3	Configure New Analytics	81
	3.4	Analytics Configuration Interface Guide	84
	3.5	Basic VMD	89
	3.6	Smart VMD	92
	3.7	Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced Analytics	95
	3.8	Queue Length Analytics	108
	3.9	Still Object	108
	3.10	Counting Analytics	111
	3.11	Motion Database (tab)	118



	3.12	Licenses (tab)	
4	Da	tabases ≡	
	4.1	Add a Database	
	4.2	Edit an Existing Database	
	4.3	Alerts	
	4.4	Manage Storage	
	4.5	Import a Database	
5	Scl	hedules 🛅	
	5.1	Add/Edit a Schedule	
	5.2	Set Schedule Recording Times	
6	Ne	etwork I/O 📟	
	6.1	Analogue	
	6.2	Network	
7	Scl	heduled Recordings 획	
	7.1	Add/Edit a Scheduled Recording	
	7.2	Right-click Menu	
	7.3	Copy Paste	
8	Scl	heduled Archives 🗾	
	8.1	Archive Video Manually	
	8.2	Description	
	8.3	New Scheduled Archive Window	
9	Eve	ents ۶	
	9.1	Cathexis Events Metadatabase	
	9.2	CathexisVision System Events Window	
	9.3	New Events Window Interface	
	9.4	General Settings Tab	
	9.5	Triggers Tab	
	9.6	Actions Tab	
	9.7	Resources Tab	
1(D Mo	onitors 🔲	
	10.1	General Settings	
	10.2	Monitors Tab on a Base Station	
	10.3	Adding a Monitor	
00	05-202	200528-250 28 May 2020	Page 42



1	.0.4	Access	158
11	Acce	ess Rights 🚣	159
12	Tecł	nnical Alarms 🕙	162
1	.2.1	General Settings	162
1	.2.2	Add/Edit a Technical Alarm	164
13	Virtu	ual Inputs 🗲	167
		Add a Virtual Input	
14	Keyl	boards 🚢	168
1	.4.1	Recording Server	168
1	.4.2	Base Station	168
15	Inte	gration Devices General Settings 🔎	169
1	.5.1	Integration Database	169
1	.5.2	The Integration Devices Panel	170
1	.5.3	Important Considerations	172
16	Ana	logue Matrix 🖽	174
1	.6.1	Add/Edit an Analogue Matrix	174



1 Configure Servers

Configure Servers is where all server-based settings take place. A **CathexisVision** site is a collection of one or more individual units, which are consolidated in the software as an individual site. This means that one can add and remove units from sites, as well as change settings on a unit-by-unit basis.

In the **Configure Servers panel**, there will be a list of all servers, and under each server, a list of setting options available on that server:

E-EVirtual 5043a (MASTER)

These options include: Cameras, Video Analytics, Databases, Schedules, Network I/O, Scheduled Recordings, Scheduled Archives, Events, Monitors, Access Rights, Technical Alarms, Virtual Inputs, Keyboards, Integration Devices, and Analogue Matrix.

1.1 Server Options

1.1.1 <u>Open Configure Servers</u>

To open the Configure Servers setup, follow the instructions below.

Site Layouts Tools Se	ttings Help
Copen tab 🛛 🕨	Cameras
🚷 Close site's tabs	Map
💡 Change password	Databases
💡 Change login	🛞 Setup

Servers

After logging into the site, to open Configure Server simply click on **Site** \rightarrow **Open Tab** \rightarrow **Setup.** Once in the Setup Tab, click on

the Configure Servers icon:

Note: Right-clicking on the tab of any open site will bring up the same menu as the one accessed via the method above.

The servers list will be seen to the right, and the panel to the right of that will contain the options for the current selection.

1.1.2 Add/Detach/Delete/Replace a Unit

1.1.2.1 Add a Unit

To add a new unit to a site, right-click on any white-space in the

servers list panel (one may even click on an existing server), and click on New server. Then enter the IP Address of the server. There will be a prompt to enter an administrative username, and password.

CATHEXIS		
New server	Unit info	Login 2 X

<u>Note</u>: The server must already be running **CathexisVisionNVR**. One may, however, add an unlicensed unit, as **all** servers may be licensed from the Configure Servers panel.

1.1.2.2 Detach, Delete, Replace a Unit

New unit Detach unit	To Detach a unit, right-click on the unit in the Servers list, and click on Detach Unit . There will be a prompt to enter an administrative username and password.
Fedora Unit WinNVR (I New unit Camer Delete unit	A Detached unit will still appear in the servers list. To fully delete the unit, right-click on the detached unit, and select Delete Unit .
	To Replace a detached unit with another unit, right-click on the detached unit and click on Replace Unit . The steps after this are the same as adding a unit.

Note: Only replace units that have been detached, or that cannot be reached on the network due to a hardware failure.

1.1.3 <u>Right-Click on a Unit</u>

Right-clicking on a unit allows one to perform a number of vital actions.

New server	New Server is dealt with in Add a Unit (1.a) above.
Licensing	Licensing is how an individual recording server is licensed, and this is dealt with in
Audit server	the installation section of the manual.
Fetch Sherlocks	Audit Server allows auditing the specific unit. Auditing is explained below. It is
	also dealt with in the GUI Document.
	Fetch Sherlocks will allow fetching the Sherlocks for this device. See below.



1.1.3.1 Audit Server

In the second secon	1000	Time	Action	User
The of the Month to date		2013-0	Log in as dvs (1	dvs
📄 Filter on user 🛛 chrisw 💽	60	2013-0	Start monitoring	dvs
Filter on resources select resources	GG	2013-0	Stop monitoring	dvs
Filter on actions <u>- select actions</u>	08080×0×0×0×08080	2013-0	Log in as guest	guest
		2013-0	Start reviewing	dvs
	. 🎽	2013-0	Review comma	dvs
Show first 1000 💠 results		2013-0	Stop reviewing	dvs
Show Time, Action, User	GG	2013-0	Start monitoring	dvs
	GG	2013-0	Stop monitoring	dvs
	••	2012.0	Ctat reviewing	dura
	•			•

Audit trails are the historical "footprints" left by various processes. They are used primarily as diagnostic tools to identify exactly what happened in the system. Each audit trail is in the form of a textual list of historical actions.

 Filter on time <u>in the Month to date</u> Filter on user Chrisw Filter on resources <u>- select resources -</u> 	There are multiple options for filtering the audits, as there can be an overwhelming amount of information in the audit logs. All the hyperlinks open up a full list of options to filter on.
Filter on actions <u> select actions</u>	Filter Time, Users, Resources, and Actions.
Show <u>first</u> 1000 🔶 results Show <u>Time, Action, User</u>	The Show first/last option limits how many of the results are brought up. Show time/action/user option allows adding and removing audit report columns, and will list the selected variables.

1.1.3.1.1 Print, Save, Refresh

The report is not live, so to update the information, click on Refresh.
To print the Report for reference, click on the printer icon.
For a digital copy of the Report, click on the disk icon.



1.1.3.2 Fetch Sherlocks

Sherlock files are a diagnostic tool used by the Support Desk. The normal procedure is to email the Sherlock file to the Support Desk (<u>support@cat.co.za</u>), with a description of the problem, but it can also be saved to disk.

To get the Sherlock files, right-click on that unit, then left-click on Fetch Sherlocks, this will generate the Sherlock pack. Then either **Save them to** disk or **Email** the Sherlocks.

Save to disk	
Email	

Note: clicking on **Email to Recipients**, will open up the Operating Systems default email client. **Save to Disk** will allow saving the Sherlock files to any storage attached to the workstation.

1.2 General Tab

When clicking on the actual server name (not the 💷 used to expand the options), the right-hand panel will fill with the General Setup options for that server.

Servers	General Email Audio Communications
> RACHEL-PC (MASTER)	Server name RACHEL-PC
	Video format V
	Network interface TAP-Windows Adapter V9 (10.0.1 $ imes $
	Encrypted links Secure ~
	Manual dome control override period 10 seconds 🖨
	Enable catMobile connections
	Allow transcoded live video
Server Name	The descriptive name given to the individual unit. It identifies the unit in the GUI.
Video Format	Choose between PAL and NTSC.
	Note: It is not advisable to mix formats across units on the same
Notwork Interface	site.
Network Interface	Will list the Network Interfaces on this unit, and their current IP Addresses.
Encrypted links	Set level of encryption for external site connections:
	 Disabled, Minimal only critical connections are encrypted, Secure (default); all connections except those with high volume video are encrypted, All – all connections are encrypted (including high volume video links). The encryption engine uses openssl (SHA512 hashes, ephemeral DH RSA with forward secrecy (DH 2048 bit), and AES-GCM 128-bit symmetric ciphers) equivalent to TLS 1.3.



Manual Dome Control Override Period	The period of time the controller must be inactive on a particular PTZ camera before it resumes its automatic responses. (E.g. tours, presets, etc.)
Enable CatMobile	CatMobile connections are connections to the unit via a web
Connections.	browser, or <u>the iPhone/Android</u> Apps that are available online. <u>Note</u> : The mobile connections are made on a unit-by-unit basis, with no site knowledge. Enable this on each unit that needs to be available via the mobile interface.
Allow Transcoded Live Video	This is currently only available on Windows units. It uses software encoding to add another, lower quality MPEG, stream to send to the cameras tab. This is useful for remote viewing, but will put extra strain on the processor of the unit.



1.3 Email Tab

Settings	Test email	Emailing is an option for
Server From email address From name Port 25 Connection security None Authentication method None User name Password Show	To Subject Test email This is a test email	notifying a Site Contact, and is an Action associated with an Event . For example: a possible Event Action would be to send an email to a specific email address, when there is movement on a camera. The settings are standard email settings, associated with the user's email account.
	Send	

Note: As mentioned above, these are all standard email settings. The Port number is the user's SMTP port. Make sure the NVR unit can reach the mail server by configuring the correct network settings, IP, Default Gateway, and dns server.

1.3.1.1 Test Settings

Opposite **Settings** is the **Test Email** box, from which a test email can be sent to another email account, just as if it were from a normal email client.

Note: Before attempting to send a test email, remember to click

1.4 Audio Tab

A full list of all available audio devices is available in the respective drop-down menus. The device selected from the menu will become the device used if this unit is used as a Viewing Station as well as an NVR.



Local System Audio is the name given to the on-board audio device located on this server.

My audio devices is a list of the audio devices available on this server. The device selected here will determine the audio devices which are used as calling/listening devices, if this server is ever used as a Viewing Station.

This will change the name of the device as reflected in the Resources Panel.



1.4.1 <u>Audio and Video Synchronisation</u>

Assuming the source audio and video are synchronised on the camera, CathexisVision will maintain this synchronisation to less than 500 milliseconds.

1.5 Communications Tab

A Heartbeat is a signal sent from the capture unit (recording server) to an Alarm Management Gateway unit, which tells the Gateway that the server is still active. If the message fails to come through, the Gateway will generate an alarm.

This will generate an alarm if the server goes down, or if the communications medium goes down.

Note: This needs to be setup on both the capture station and the Alarm Management Gateway.

1.5.1.1 Enable Heartbeat

To enable sending the heartbeat on the unit: check the Send gateway heartbeat tick box.

1.5.1.2 Select a Base-Station

The base station referred to here is the Alarm Management Gateway unit the heartbeat message is being sent to.

1.5.1.3 Select an interval for the Heartbeat

This will define how often the unit will send a Heartbeat to the Gateway.

1.6 Gateway Tab

This section deals with the Alarm Gateway, as such, this option will only be seen if the selected server is setup as a gateway.

1.6.1.1 Send heartbeat monitoring alarms

Send heartbeat monitoring alarms to	select base-station	-	× S	2
-------------------------------------	---------------------	---	-----	---

If a heartbeat alarm is triggered, the gateway needs to take an action (send an alarm).

In general, this alarm should go to the gateway itself. So simply select the gateway from the drop-down menu. For the heartbeat alarms to go to some other unit, select/add that unit.

<u>Note</u>: If this is not checked, these heartbeat alarms will not be sent anywhere.



1.6.1.2 If an alarm is not handled

If an alarm in the gateway has not been handled in 🕘 📄 minutes then	If they have not been handled for a
if it is a technical alarm forward it to -select base-station - 💌 🎽 🖉	while, one may want to send unhandled
if it is an event alarm forward it to 🛛 – select base-station – 💌 🎽 🏼	alarms to other gateways, or base stations.
Move to History after forwarding	Decide on the time frame, as well as
	where specific types of alarms are sent.

Note: When an alarm is sent to another gateway, this alarm will appear in the incoming queue of both gateways. If one is handled, the other will remain in the incoming list. To avoid confusion, check the

Move to History after forwarding box, which will move the alarm to the history queue of the forwarding unit.

1.6.1.3 Move to history

Move gateway alams to History if they have not been handled in 20 🚔 minutes The number of alarms can build up very fast,

especially on large sites. If dealing with a site where alarms are only relevant for a short period of time, have them automatically moved to the history queue.

1.7 Configuration Backup Tab

This will back up all of this unit's **CathexisVision settings**, except for the database settings. The databases will remain on the drives chosen, but will have to be re-imported manually.

Note: One will only be able to set default path, and Enable auto backup from a Base-Station. To create a manual backup, and to restore an existing backup, be on the NVR unit itself. This is one of the very few things that cannot be done from anywhere else on the site.

1.7.1.1 Configure Backup

Configuration ba	ckup		
Enable auto ba	skup		
Auto backup path	/usr/nvr/restorepoints	Browse	Set default path

Note: Choose to back-up all units to a central location, such as a network drive.

1.7.1.2 Automatic Backup

With **Enable auto backup** checked, the unit will update the Configuration Backup **every day at 2 a.m.** local time. Set the location for the automatic backup by entering the path (or browsing to it), and clicking

Set default path



 Create backup on server Export new backup Apply saved backup Copy backup to server 	onfiguratio Configura	tion backup n	nanagement
O Apply saved backup	Creat	e backup on	server
-	O Expor	t new backup	5
O Copy backup to server	O Apply	saved backu	IP I
	🔘 Сору	backup to se	rver

1.7.1.3 Manage Configuration Backups

Clicking on Manage configuration backups... will open the dialogue to the left.

Create backup on server will create a backup on the server, in the default path that was set above.

Export a new backup will allow choosing the destination of the new backup.

Apply saved backup (formerly restore existing backup) will allow applying a saved backup.

Copy backup to server allows the user to create a restore point backup of the system's current state. So, this can be done straight after making new changes to the system.

1.8 Base-Stations Tab

The Base-stations set here are the stations to which Alarms will be sent, when one is triggered by an Event. These alarms can be sent either to individual viewing stations in a control room, or to an Alarm Management Gateway.

If sending an alarm to an Alarm Management Gateway, it will appear in the alarm queue; if sending the alarm to an individual Viewing Station, it will appear as a pop-up window.

🛃 Alar	ms	? <mark>×</mark>
0	0	
Site	e	Description
🔵 Mat	thew's Site (N	/inNVR) Test alarm
1		•

The window to the right is an example of such an alarm, on a Viewing Station.

1.8.1.1 Add a New Base Station

 New base-station
 New

 Configure the new base-station
 Image: Configure the new base-station

 Name
 New base-station

 IP address
 0 .0 .0 .0

 OK
 Cancel

Name: Give the Base-station a descriptive name. **IP address**: IP address of the specific Base-station.



1.8.1.2 Send Test Alarm

Test Base Station settings by clicking on Send test alarm. This will send a test alarm to the selected Base-station.

1.9 User Recordings Tab

The user recordings facility allows a user to manually trigger a recording if viewing footage live in the Cameras Tab. This is useful as a recording might not have been triggered otherwise.

Database	select database
Event description	\$camera_name
Call basestation	- select base-station 💽 🎽 🎵

Database will define which database User Recordings are saved to. (Tip: Create a User Recordings database.) Event Description is the name that will be given to the User Recording entry in the Database.

Call basestation will send an alarm to a Base Station whenever a User Recording is triggered.

1.9.1.1 Trigger a User Recording

1.9.1.1.1 Start the Recording

SAUE104 Read cam down Start recording	Middle-click on a camera in the Cameras Tab and Start recording should appear as an option in the drop-down menu. Click this to start the recording. If the recording has started, there will be a flashing in the top right-hand corner of the camera panel.
Video format	or the camera panel.

1.9.1.1.2 Stop the Recording

To stop the recording, middle-click on the camera panel and click on Stop recording , in the drop-down menu.

Note:

- 1. Only one camera may be triggered at a time.
- 2. It is advisable to create a separate database just for User Recordings.



2 Cameras Cameras

This section deals with configuring and adding network cameras to the server and creating camera reference images, which creates a saved image of the camera orientation and allows for comparison between older/newer reference points.

Servers	WIN7VIRTUAL - Cameras				
▲ WIN7VIRTUAL (MASTER)		Camera	Address	Driver	6
● Cameras ŵVideo analytics ■Databases	14.08	Alley	102.1.1.111	Virtual	
Schedules	A DEC	Driveway	101.1.1.111	Virtual	
Scheduled recordings	17	Front Door	103.1.1.111	Virtual	
Fevents	Int.	Input 1	103.1.1.111	Virtual	
Access rights Technical alarms Virtual inputs Keyboards License plate recognition Integration devices Analogue matrix 					
	New	E	idit	Delete Video analytics Reference images	4 items

2.1 Secure Camera Connection and Control

CathexisVision supports secure camera connection and control where supported by the manufacturer. Currently supported camera drivers in CathexisVision:

- Axis.
- Mobotix.
- Mobotix V2.

<u>Note</u>:

- 1. Please consult camera manufacturer for supported camera models and configurations.
- 2. See <u>Camera Connection</u> section of <u>Camera Addition Wizard section</u> for configuring CathexisVision for secure camera connection and control.
- 3. Please consult the CathexisVision Cyber Security Overview document for more information on the security measures.



2.1.1 <u>Camera Configuration</u>

- 1. HTTP: hypertext protocol.
- 2. Encrypted ssl/tls.
- 3. Supported by CURL (client-side URL transfer library).

2.1.2 <u>Camera Control</u>

- 1. RTSP real time streaming protocol.
- 2. HTTPS encrypted camera connection control (where supported by the manufacturer).

2.1.3 Video Streaming

- 1. RTP Real time transport protocol.
- 2. Encrypted video streaming (where supported by the manufacturer).

2.2 Adding Cameras

There are two ways to add a camera in CathexisVision:

- 1. The camera Wizard.
- 2. The Copy/Paste Function.

This section of the manual will detail these two addition methods, followed by an examination of the Camera Editing options, and some extra information on the right-click menu.

2.2.1 <u>Camera Addition Wizard</u>

The camera addition Wizard explains all the steps needed to add a camera, as well as allowing the creation of databases, schedules, and events along the way.

There are two phases in the addition Wizard:

- 1. The addition of the camera.
- 2. Setting up the system to record from that camera (either via a VMD Event, or via a scheduled recording).

To start the camera addition Wizard, click on the following is a guide to each step in the Wizard.

2.2.1.1 Camera Connection

The first step in the Wizard is the **Camera Connection** step. Here, set up all the connection details of the camera. The user needs to choose between adding a new, separate camera, and adding a camera that is a new video input for an existing camera. The options below will change on a camera-by-camera basis.



New camera Camera connection

Specify the connection details for the camera

Driver	Axis	\sim
IP address	192.168.210.5	Scan
Video input	1	* *
Port	Default	•
Login	admin	
Password	••••	
Encryption	None	\sim
	[Next >

Driver: Select the relevant camera driver.

IP Address: Set the IP address of the Camera to add.
 Scan: Scan the network for available cameras. Click on a camera and driver and an IP address will be automatically set. (Under scan, will be the option to list cameras that are already linked to other servers. Check
 Show devices used by servers.)

Video Input will be used if connecting to an encoder that has multiple analogue inputs. If not, leave it on 1.Port has a default setting, but can be configured to connect through desired port.

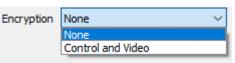
Login and password are the cameras current login details.

Encryption: Encrypted connection and control is supported on certain camera models (where supported by the manufacturer). See <u>Secure Camera Connection and Control</u> section.

Configuration is required on camera side and in CathexisVision:

CameraPlease consult camera manufacturer for supported camera models and relevantconfiguration:camera configurations.

CathexisVision When adding or editing a camera, select the desired level of encryption in the camera connection window:



Currently supported camera drivers:

- Axis.
- Mobotix.
- Mobotix V2.

Notes on adding a new video input:

- 1. When adding a new video input to an existing camera, the user will be unable to change the IP address of that camera.
- 2. This option is not available when connecting a **CathexisVision 2015** site to a later site, as this option is exclusive to later versions.

Notes on Scanning:

- 1. Some Cameras do not support automatic location requests, and will not be found using Scan.
- 2. Universal Plug and Play (**UPnP**) will have to be enabled on the cameras that do support location requests.



2.2.1.2 General Settings

General settings Configure general camera setting	gs		
Camera name Axis	H264 1280x800	2.60 Mbps	25
	Driver	Axis	<u> </u>
	IP address	192.168.71.60	
	Model	AXIS M3204	
		AXIS M3204 00408CA62694	
	Serial number Firmware		

Name	Give the camera a descriptive name, so as to make it easily identifiable in a list.			
Covert	CathexisVision gives the option to create a covert camera. There is a difference between a camera being covert, and a user not having access to it.			
	Covert	Access Level Defined		
	Camera will only be present in the Resources List of an Administrator, c access level that has been granted a this camera.			
Device	This will be a list of all the relevant information, pertaining to the device itself. It can be seen			
Information	underneath the image preview.			
Live Preview	Paused H264_CAT 1280x800 3.20 Mbps Cl	ne image displayed is a frame grab from the video feed nosen. To play the live preview click on: o enlarge the image, click on: 🛐		

Note: The image in the preview will not reflect the actual quality of the feed, as it is transcoded when viewed in the camera addition wizard.



2.2.1.3 Video Feeds

Setup video feeds Format Res Live Rec. channel Analyt 1 H264 1.0MP (1280x800) Yes #1 (default) Format H264_CAT 2 Unused (unicast) H264_CAT Resolution 1280x800 4 Unused (unicast) Framerate 30.0 8 Bitrate 2.60 Mbps GOP length 20 Bitrate 2.60 Mbps Colality 10 Bitrate 2.60 Mbps Image: Colored transmitted trans	New came		-					? ×
(i) Live Live viewing is enabled on 1 of the feeds (i) Recording Recording is enabled on 1 of the feeds (i) Analytics A new feed could be created for analytics (ii) Edit Clear	Format 1 H264 2 Unused 3 Unused 4 Unused	Res. 1.0MP (1280x8 (unicast) (unicast)			Format H264_CAT Resolution 1280x800 Framerate 30.0 Bitrate 2.60 Mbps	H264 1280x80	0 2.60 Mbps 💌 📀	
	Rec	ording Recording is er	nabled on uld be crea	1 of the feeds ated for analytics	 Quality	IP address Model Serial numbe Firmware	192.168.71.60 AXIS M3204 r 00408CA62694 5.40.9	

2.2.1.3.1 Add/Edit a Video Feed

To add/edit a video feed, click on one of the available feeds in the list, and click on the **Edit** button. This will bring up a feed dialogue with the available video feeds, and the options that pertain to them. The two most common IP feeds are JPEG and H.264 (MPEG4).

JPEG

🚡 New feed	? ×
Transmission	Unicast 💽
Format	JPEG 👻
Resolution	14kP (160x90) 👻
Framerate	30.0
Quality	50 💌
ОК	Cancel

Transmission will show the transmission type.

Format is the compression format used by this stream. Click the dropdown menu to choose the one desired.

Resolution is the number of pixels in the image.

Framerate is the number of frames recorded per second.

Quality defines how lossy the compression of the image is. At 100 the image will have the best quality; at 50 it will have the lowest quality.



<u>H.264</u>

🛃 New feed	? ×
Transmission	Unicast 🔽
Format	H264 💌
Resolution	14kP (160x90)*
Framerate	30.0
Bitrate type	CBR
Bitrate	80kbps 🖨 Normal quality 💌
Key frame distance	20 frames
Key frame rate	1.5 fps
Multicast Disabled	
	OK Cancel

Transmission will show the transmission type. **Format** is the compression format used by this stream. Click the drop-down menu to choose the one desired.

Resolution is the number of pixels in the image. **Framerate** is the number of frames recorded per second.

Bitrate Type is the way that the bitrate is handled. A constant bitrate will be more predictable, but will lose more information the more the image changes. Variable bit-rate is less predictable, but will have better images when the picture has more motion. **Bitrate** is the amount of information, in bits, that the feed will send per second. (**Quality** defines how lossy the compression of the image is.)

Key Frame Distance (GOP Length) is the number of frames between each I-Frame (Key Frame).

Multicast

Setup Multicast on feeds by selecting the relevant option from the feed dialogue. There are three options; **disabled**, **auto**, and **manual**.

Note: To not use multicast, leave it disabled.

Manual

Multicast	Manual	-
Multicast IP		
Multicast port	0	*

With manual selected, enter in Multicast IP, and Multicast Port.

Auto

On auto, the Multicast address will be automatically assigned. The core settings for this may be found in the document on the **General Site Setup** section of the **Setup Tab**.



🕕 Live	Live viewing is enabled on 1 of the feeds	
Recording	Recording is enabled on 1 of the feeds	
🛕 Analytics	A new feed could be created for analytics	ß

This area will show the status of the feeds created. Whether **Recording**, **Live Viewing**, or **Analytics** is enabled.

Note: Click on any of the icons to display detailed information about the feed/problem.



Automatic Configuration

If there is an 2^{2} icon at the end of the feed notification, this means that there is a potential problem with the feed setup. Clicking 2^{2} will automatically fix the problem.

2.2.1.4 Right-Click Menu (Live, Recording, and Recording Channel Settings)

Right-clicking on a feed, after it is set it up, will bring up the menu seen below. These are settings that can only be accomplished after the feed has been set up.

Edit	Edit	Add/edit a feed.
Clear	Clear	Clears the feed.
Disable live	Disable Live	viewing of the feed.
Disable recording	Disable Recording	of the feed.
Set recording channel Enable video analytics	Set Recording Channel	Define which channel number will represent this feed.
Enable video analytics	Enable Analytics	Enable Video Analytics.

2.2.1.4.1 Analytics

Create a second feed in order to enable analytics on a unit. Right-click feed \rightarrow Enable Analytics. There are a few rules when it comes to enabling analytics:

- 1. If an analytics-enabled channel is not set up, there will not be a prompt to add Video Motion Detection (VMD) later in this wizard, nor can one add VMD, using this feed later.
- 2. Only feeds that are QVGA resolution, and lower, will give the option to enable analytics.
- 3. If there is a at the end of the Clicking on the will automatically enable one.

2.2.1.5 I/O

The next step in the addition is the I/O setup. The I/O values represented in the GUI will depend on the I/Os provided by the encoder.

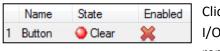


) Se	tup I/O								
In	puts					1	Sector Sector	1.0419	IP RE
1	Name Input 1	State Oclear	Enabled		Enable Edit		. ~		
Ou	tputs					and the	11,		
	Name	State	Enabled	Pulse duratio	Enable		the second se	100	
1	Output 1	1 🥥Clear	×	1000ms	Edit	Stel			
						H264 3840x21	50 6.50 Mbps \vee 🜔		[
Tr	ggers			Trigger hist	ory				
	Name	Sta En	nable	Message		Driver	Dahua		
		E	Edit	PULSENEWFI	LE	IP address Model	192.168.5.179 IPC-HDBW5830E-7		
			lew				r 2M0371CPAG00017		
			vew			Firmware	2.640.0000002.0.R		
		De	elete			MAC address	e0:50:8b:58:a9:cf		

I/O

Inputs are used to trigger an event; **Outputs** are used to give a desired output as a result of a triggered event.

Renaming



Click on the I/O name to rename it.

Enabling



Click on the red cross or click the enable button. Once enabled it may be used to trigger an event.



2.2.1.5.1 Edit an Input

Edit output						
Name	Output 1					
Enabled	No					
Pulse duration	1000ms ≑					
Pulse only	No 🔻					
OK Cancel						

Name: Give the output a descriptive name.

Enabled: Will indicate whether the output is disabled/enabled.

Pulse duration: Will set the amount of time (in milliseconds) that the output will pulse for, if it is set to pulse.

Pulse only: If set to Yes, the output will not allow itself to be permanently Set.

2.2.1.5.2 Edit an Output

Edit output					
Name	Output 1				
Enabled	No 👻				
Pulse duration	1000ms				
Pulse only	No 🔻				
	OK Cancel				

Name: Give the output a descriptive name.

Enabled: Will indicate whether the output is disabled/enabled.

Pulse duration: Will set the amount of time (in milliseconds) that the output will pulse for, if it is set to pulse.

Pulse only: If set to Yes, the output will not allow itself to be permanently Set.

2.2.1.5.3 Triggers

Triggers			Certain cameras will
Name State E	nabled	Message	have their own event
			triggers, and encoders will often have I/O
Enable/Disable	Edit	New Delete Show trigger messages	options.

Note:

- Clicking on any of the column values (Clear/Set; Enabled/Disabled) of an I/O will toggle the value. E.g. Clicking on a Clear state will change the state to Set. These options are also available via the Right-Click menu.
- 2. Give the I/Os descriptive names, otherwise they will not be identifiable.



2.2.1.5.4 Serial Ports

蓫 Configure ser 😑 💷 👞						
Configure serial port						
Baud rate	9600	•				
Data bits	8	•				
Parity	None	•				
Stop bits	1	•				
0	К	Cancel				

Highlight the serial port to configure then click the **Configure** button.

This will give the option to change the **Baud rate**, **Data bits**, **Parity**, **Stop bits**, and other camera dependent settings.

Note: This option will only be available if the camera has serial ports.

2.2.1.6 Edge Review Setup

New camera			?	\times
Edge Setup Edge				•
Enable edge review Yes 🗸	H264 3840x210	50 6.50 Mbps V		D D L &
	Driver	Dahua		
	IP address Model	192.168.5.179 IPC-HDBW5830E-Z		
		r 2M0371CPAG00017		
		2.640.0000002.0.R		
	MAC address	e0:50:8b:58:a9:cf		
	< Ba	nck Next >	Car	ncel

Cameras which support Edge recordings will have an additional tab in the camera wizard, which enables viewing of the camera's onboard Edge database within CathexisVision. Select **Yes** from the dropdown menu to enable the database.

When this is enabled, the camera's Edge database will be available for selection in camera review, as with other CathexisVision system databases.

If this is disabled, the database will not be available for selection.



2.2.1.7 PTZ

Check the **Enable PTZ** box if adding a PTZ camera. After this, all the available PTZ options will appear in the Wizard interface.

2.2.1.7.1 General Settings

Enable PTZ	<u>Note</u> : These options can vary on a camera-by-camera
Protocol Pelco-D	basis.
Address 1	
Port Outside Re	ar PTZ (Zone 8&15) port 1 💌 🎽 📝 🍡
Preset 1 name Prese	at 1 💌
Zoom speed User	defined
Home position sele	ect home preset
Go home during s	chedule Every day 🚽 🍋 🖉
	will be recalled when user control is relinquished
or 21600sec	after a system PTZ command is issued
Switch wash/wipe	e relays
Configure PTZ tours	
Preset Name	Give Presets descriptive names (such as 'front door' etc).
Zoom Speed	This defines how fast the camera will zoom in when using the PTZ controls.
	Note: Test zoom speed by clicking with a pression the PTZ control wheel of the live view panel to
	the right.
Home	A home position is a pre-set position to which the camera will return after a set period of
Position	inactivity.
	Automatic Return to Home:
	Set a schedule during which the camera will return to its home position. When the schedule
	(see: 5. Schedules) is inactive, the camera will remain in the last position that it was left. If
	there is no schedule set, the camera will never automatically return to its home position.
	To have it always return home after a certain period, simply enable the Every Day schedule.
Switch Wash	In the case that the Wash and Wipe relays are incorrectly attributed, this will swap them over
and Wipe	to the correct order.
Relays	
Configure	A PTZ tour will run through a sequence of pre-set positions. (See section immediately below).
PTZ tours	



2.2.1.7.2 Configure PTZ Tours

lame 🔷	Schedule	6
Day time Tour	Working Hours	
New	Edit Delete	1 item

Multiple tours may be configured. To add/edit a tour click on **New/Edit**.

This will open up the PTZ tour configuration dialogue below.

New PTZ tour Configure new PTZ tour	Give
Name Schedule Not scheduled	dese sche (see
Sequence Command Hold period	<u>Seq</u> This
Add <u>preset</u> Preset 1 v holding for 10sec 🔄 Go	whi run
OK Cancel	

Give the tour a descriptive name, and a schedule if necessary (see: 5 Schedules).

<u>Sequence</u>

This is the sequence in which the Presets will run.

2.2.1.7.3 Add Preset, Multiple Presets, or a Pattern, to the Tour

Preset

Select the Preset, set how long the camera should linger at this Preset.

Add	preset	Preset 1	-	holding for	10sec	\$	Go	
-----	--------	----------	---	-------------	-------	----	----	--

Multiple Presets

- Starting at: Select the first Preset to add.
- Add: This is the number of Presets to add.

In the example below, Presets 4 to 6 will be added.

Add	multiple presets	starting at	Preset 4	💌 ad	d 3	presets, holding for	10sec	Go
						CONTRACTOR OF		



Pattern

Select the pattern to add.

Add <u>pattern</u> 1 I holding for 10sec I Go

2.2.1.7.4 PTZ Procedures



Note: Don't forget to select/play a live feed.

2.2.1.7.5 Using the PTZ Control Panel

With a Pan-Tilt-Zoom (PTZ) camera an operator can manipulate the camera's direction, Zoom, focal distance (Focus), and amount of light (Iris). The operator can also control pre-configured camera views called "Presets".

A Dome Control Panel becomes available when a Live PTZ camera is selected in the **CathexisVision** interface.

Click the panel's drop-down menu and select **PTZ** The software joystick displays the options below.

2.2.1.7.5 Using the PTZ Control Panel			
Pan Left/Right:	Tilt Up/Down:		
Drag joystick left / right.	Drag joystick up / down		
Move Camera Faster:	Move Camera Slower:		
Distance determines speed - drag joystick out, in required direction.	Distance determines speed - drag joystick closer in, in required direction.		
Zoom In/Out:	Focus Further/Closer:		
Watch the live camera w hile pressi ng the Zoom + and	Watch the live camera while pressing the		
Zoom – button.	Focus + and Focus – button.		
Go to Preset:	Gain Control of Dome/PTZ:		
 Select the Preset from the drop-down menu, and then click GO. The camera view will change to the Preset. To relinquish manual control of the dome/PTZ 	(Applies if system runs remote tours automatically, or switches display based on events).		
 camera from the PTZ panel, click Auto. 4. If the system runs remote tours automatically, or switches displays based on events, these automated responses will take over. 	Either click manual, or simply move the software joystick.		
Lighten/Darken Live Camera View:	Define a Preset:		
Press the iris+, or iris – button. The image will lighten or darken.	 Select the Preset number, from the drop- down menu. Use the joystick controls to establish the Camera View, Zoom, Focus, and Light (Iris). Click SET. 		



4. Go to this Preset to check it.

2.2.1.7.6 PTZ Priority Control

Control of a PTZ camera works on a priority system to determine who gets control of the camera should more than one user at a time attempt to control the camera.

Administrators get the highest priority, after which the priority hierarchy runs from user level 30 down to user level 1.

For example, should a level 10 user and a level 1 user attempt to control the PTZ camera, the level 10 user will get priority control. An administrator would get priority over both.

Note:

- 1. If two users of the same user level attempt to control the camera, then the first user gets priority and the second user will have to wait until the 'Dome override' period has elapsed.
- 2. Manual control of the camera takes priority over event-initiated/auto control of the dome.

2.2.1.8 Scheduled and Activity Triggered Recording: Database

Once PTZ configuration is complete, the camera will have been added to the system and the user is presented with the option to configure scheduled and activity triggered recordings.

• New camera	? 🗙
Continue? Confirm that you want to continue	
The camera has been added to the system	
Would you like to configure scheduled and activity triggered re-	cordings?
Create a new database	
Yes	No

Recordings require a database.

If a database has not yet been created, select Create a new database and click Yes to create a database and configure recordings.

If a database has already been created, leave the option unselected and click **Yes**.

If recordings are not required, click **No**.

Note: Activity Scheduled recordings are only available if at least one of the streams has been enabled for video analytics.

<u>Note</u>: This will setup the database on the recording server that the camera has been added to, not the local unit (unless the recording server is the local unit). For further information on setting up a database, please consult the Databases section.



2.2.1.9 Add Scheduled Recording

Set the camera to only record at certain times, to increase efficiency and save disk space.

📀 New camera	? 💌	Click Add scheduled recording
Scheduled recording Configure scheduled recording		Click .
		Select the database , channel, and
Add scheduled recording		frame-rate to apply a schedule to.
Database Scheduled and Activity Record -	•	
Recording channel #1 - H264_CAT,2304x1296,30fps 🔻	•	Setup the Schedule during which the
Frame-rate Full rate 🔻	•	cameras should record. Select an existin
Schedule Always) 🎦 🕜	schedule or create a new one. See
	-	below.
Only record when EIO	<u>hiah</u>	
		Select Only record when
		conditionally record based on the state
Next >	Cancel	of an input. See below.

Input Condition: Check the box to only record when... then select an input from the drop-down menu, and modify the condition requirement of that input by clicking on the blue hyperlink next to the menu. This sets the scheduled recording to record based on the condition of an input. Inputs include existing schedules, virtual inputs, analytics algorithms, etc. See the Scheduled Recordings section of Configure Servers for more information.

Note: Depending on the schedule selected for the recording, unless an input condition is enabled, the recording will be continuous.

2.2.1.9.1 Set Up a Schedule



	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Monday							

Select the schedule from the drop-down menu. Create a new schedule by clicking on the $\stackrel{\text{(i)}}{=}$ icon. To change an existing schedule, click on the $\stackrel{\text{(i)}}{=}$ button.

Select/Deselect time cells

Left-click to **select recording time** – the green bars. Right-click to **unselect recording time** – the yellow bars. Monday will be recording from 00:00 – 02:00 in the morning.

2.2.1.10 Activity Recording



<u>Note</u>: This does a number of things. This will add Video Motion Detection, pre-event recordings, and add an Event to the system.

2.2.1.10.1 Recording

Add activity trigge	ered recordings
Event Video an	alytics
Name	mam activity
Database	Database 🔹
Schedule	Always 🔻
Recording channel	#1 - H264_CAT,320x240,30fps 🔻
Frame-rate	Full rate 🔹
Record 0 sec	pre-events at Full rate

The recording option enables setup of the recording settings.

Database is the database this event will record to. Schedule defines when this event will be active. Recording channel defines which video channel will be recorded.

Frame rate defines the frame-rate that recordings will take place in.

Pre-events defines a time that will be buffered, and recorded, from before the initial trigger.

2.2.1.10.2 Activity

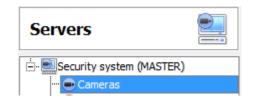
The default algorithm here is the Basic Video Motion detection.

The settings for Video Motion Detection are too detailed to go into under this section, for a full description see the Video analytics section of this document.

2.2.2 <u>Camera Addition Method 2: Copy/Paste Cameras</u>

The second method of adding a camera is by Copy/Paste. This is accessed by **right-clicking on an existing camera**.

If adding more than one camera that operates on the same driver, **CathexisVision** offers a very easy solution. Copy and paste new cameras, retaining the information of the camera selected for copying.



To Copy/Paste new cameras, navigate to the cameras panel of the desired unit, right-click on the previously added camera and click on Copy

Then right-click anywhere in the Cameras Panel and click on Paste new...

There are two ways to paste cameras: **Sequential**, and **Discovered**. These are discussed below.

2.2.2.1 Paste Mode: Sequential

The paste mode sequential window provides the option to add the new cameras as a direct copy of the camera that copied.



Select paste mode Sequential	•
Number of cameras to add	1
Start IP address	
Number of cameras per encoder	1
Start input	1

Start IP Address will determine the IP address of the first new camera being added. The IP addresses will be incremented from here. (So, make sure an IP address in this range has not been used.)
Number of cameras per encoder must be the full number of channels available on this encoder.
Start Input is the actual physical channel the first camera should be added to.

2.2.2.2 Paste Mode: Discovered

Select paste mode	Discovered camera	•	
-------------------	-------------------	---	--

Discovered cam	Discovered cameras					
Address	Model	Camera name				
✓ Cameras	0.101 Cathexis HDE	1004				
🗹 Input 1	1	AUTO				
- 🗹 Input 2	2	AUTO				
🗹 Input 🤅	3	AUTO				
- 🗹 Input 4	4	AUTO				
🚊 🗹 192.168.70	0.103 Cathexis HDE	1004				
- 🗹 Input 1	1	AUTO				

Note: This will copy the video settings from the copied camera onto the discovered cameras selected.

2.2.2.3 Copy/Paste Video Settings

If a number of cameras with the same drivers have already been added, to simply transfer the Video Settings of each camera across, right-click and select Copy. Then right-click on the camera to add the video settings to, and select Paste video settings.

Note:

- This is just the Video Feed settings; it will not add Video Motion Detection analytics.
- Only copy onto cameras that have the same driver as the camera that has been copied.

2.3 Edit Existing Camera

<u>Note</u>: If making any changes to the setup of a camera that is currently multicasting, restart the streams. This simply entails removing and reselecting the cameras in the Cameras tab, after settings have been saved.

Settings								Edit an alrea	•	
General	Connection	Video feeds	I/O	PTZ	Preevents	Access	Privacy zones	camera by so		t and
Camera nar	ne Axis 232D+	Support						clicking on	Edit	
Covert										



2.3.1.1 Repeated vs Additional Options

The camera setup options of **General, Connection, Video Feeds, I/O, and PTZ** are all dealt with verbatim, in section b. Camera Addition Wizard (above), they will not be repeated here. Three options are added in the Editing Tabs: **Pre-events, Access Levels,** and **Privacy Zones**. These options will be dealt with here.

Note:

The Wizard covers the process of setting up a Database, Scheduled Recordings, and Video Motion Algorithm triggered recordings. The Tab Edition only changes camera settings, and therefore does not have these extra options. Databases, Scheduled Recordings, Algorithms, and Events all have their own panels under Configure Servers.

2.3.2 Pre-events tab

Framerate Full rate Full rate Key frames

Pre-events were setup under the Activity Recording Section of the Wizard. The number of pre-events cannot be defined here, but one may define the frame rate of the pre-events in this tab.

<u>Note</u>: JPEG is recorded in Key Frames, so only the option of **Frames per Second** will be provided when setting the pre-events on a MJPEG stream.

2.3.3 <u>Access tab</u>

Under the Access tab, setup which user levels have control of the different facets of the camera.

From within the **Cameras** section, under **Your_Server_Name**, select the camera, click and select the **Access** tab.

From within the **Cameras** section under **Your_Server_Name**, select the camera, click and select the **Access** tab.



Edit support office

Camera settings Edit support office (camera recordings are DISABLED while editing the camera)

General	Con	nection	Video fi	eeds	PTZ	Preevents	Acces	s Privacy zones		
	Live	Review	PTZ	PTZ	Set	Audio	Hide privacy zones	Set all		W AND
Level 1 Level 2 Level 3 Level 4 Level 5 Level 6 Level 7 Level 8 Level 9 Level 10 Level 11 Level 11 Level 12 Level 13 Level 14 Level 15	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	************	CREEK < < < < < × × × × × × × × × × × × × ×	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	CHERKKKKKKKKKKKKK	****		H264 2048x1536 3.40 Mbps O Camera information Driver Cathexis Virtual IP address 106.1.1.1
Set all	ýx,		~×		~	(~X	~×	~ ~	-	

A \leq means that this level has access; a \approx means that this right has been denied to this level. Left-click on the tick/cross to change its designation.

Important Note on Access Rights:

- 1. All access levels on this unit are managed in the Access Rights Panel of the Server (Site → Open Tab → Setup → Configure Servers → Expand the Server → Access Rights).
- Access rights pertain to the access levels assigned to specific users. If a user is given level 1 access, and this camera is only assigned to other levels, that user will not see this camera (users are managed in the Site → Open Tab → Setup → Users).
- 3. Non-admin users may be given the right to configure other non-admin users. See the main Setup manual for more information on this.

- - ×



Live	This controls which Access Levels can view the camera's live feed. If this option is disabled,
	the user will not be able to view the camera at all, and all the following rights will be
	automatically denied.
Review	This controls which Access Levels can review recorded footage from this camera.
PTZ	This controls which Access Levels can control PTZ movement.
PTZ Menu	This controls which Access Levels have the ability to alter the PTZ menu.
Set Presets	This controls which Access Levels can change PTZ Preset positions.
Audio Listen	This controls which Access Levels can listen to the audio associated with the camera.
Hide Privacy	This controls which Access Levels can remove the privacy zones added to the camera.
Zones	
Set All	Selecting 🗹 will give this level access to all settings; selecting X will give this level access to none.

2.3.3.1 Audio Listen Access Right

The table below details situations in which the Audio Listen access rights settings, configured by the user, do and do not apply.

Audio Listen access right settings <u>do apply</u> to:	Audio Listen access right settings <u>do not apply</u> to:		
Live viewing.	Independent audio channels.		
Reviewing from the camera tab.	Archived video.		
Reviewing from the database tab (both video and	Connecting to a 2016.2 server using a 2015/2016.1		
integration databases).	viewer.		
Viewing video when handling an alarm in the Alarm	Connecting to a 2016.1 server using a 2016.2 viewer.		
Management Gateway.			

2.3.4 Privacy Zones Tab

<u>Note</u>: Adding/editing **Privacy zones** is not a part of the camera addition Wizard, and can only be completed by editing a camera after it has been added.

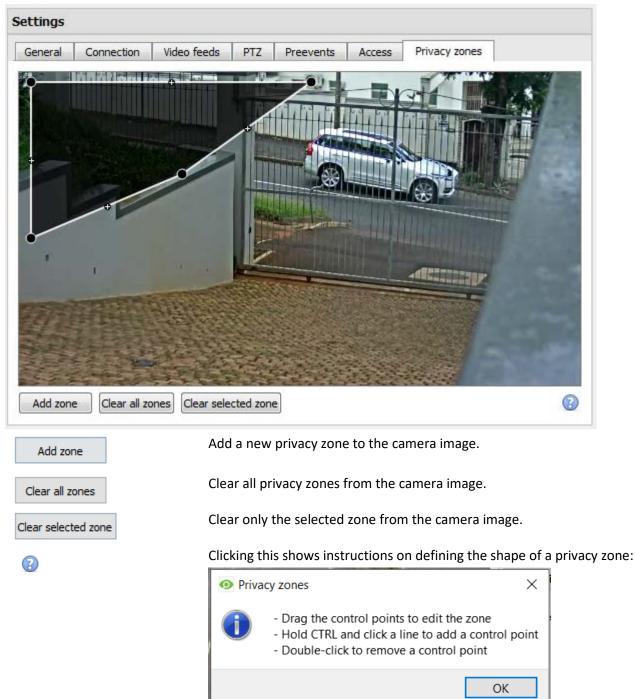
Adding a **Privacy zone** will hide an area(s) of the camera image. The **Privacy zones** can be hidden/shown by an administrator or user levels which have been assigned the access right to do so – this is covered in the previous section and in <u>Access Rights</u>. As such, the **CathexisVision** system will record the footage behind the privacy zone, but only users with access rights will be able to view it.

This is a useful feature, as some areas of the video stream may contain sensitive information, which require certain clearance levels to view. For example, a camera operator in a bank might not be privy to footage in which money is being counted, but if there is a dispute surrounding the money then a user with the correct access level will be able to hide the **Privacy zone** and review the dispute.



2.3.4.1 Add a Privacy Zone

Once the wizard is complete, open the camera for editing again and navigate to the Privacy Zones tab.



2.3.4.1.1 Reshape a Privacy zone:

- Click and drag the control points at the corner of the box (select a **Privacy zone** to bring up control points).
- CTRL-click on a line to add a new control point.
- Double-click an existing control point to remove it.

2.3.4.1.2 Remove a Privacy zone:

- To remove all, click Clear all zones.
- To remove specific zones, select and click
 Clear selected zone



Once done, click to save.

Please consult the Operator's Manual for guidance on how to hide/show privacy zones in the Cameras Tab.

2.4 Right-click on a Camera

New	New	Add a new camera.
Disable	Disable	Disables the current camera (but does not delete it).
Сору	Сору	Copies camera settings and enables them to be pasted onto a new camera or existing camera.
Video analytics	Video analytics	Opens Edit Video Analytics window.
Set camera name Open in browser	Set camera name	Edit the camera name without having to open the edit window.
Delete	Open in browser	Opens camera URL in web browser.
Descrition	Delete	Removes camera from site.
Properties	Properties	Opens properties window (below), and enables editing the camera.

Note: New, Paste New, Copy, and Paste Video Settings are all dealt with above, under Copy Paste Cameras.

2.4.1 Camera Properties

Right-click camera and select **Properties**.

Settings							
General	Connection	Video feeds	PTZ	Preevents	Access	₽₫₽	
Camera nar	ne Demo Room	1					
Camera URI	L <u>http://101.1.</u>	<u>1.111</u>					
							H264 1920x1080 3.40 Mbps 🔻 🜔
							Camera information
							Driver Cathexis Virtual
							IP address 101.1.1.111

Here, all camera settings configured during the Camera Addition Wizard can be edited by selecting the various tabs.

The Camera URL of the specific camera is listed automatically when the camera is added.

2.5 Video Analytics Button

Select a camera from the list and click the **Video Analytics** button at the bottom of the cameras to add/edit video analytics. This can also be accomplished by following **Setup Tab** \rightarrow **Configure Servers** \rightarrow **Video Analytics**.



Front Door						
Front Door Configure video analytics						
Configure via	leo analytics					
Name	Algorithm	Licensed	6			
New	Edit	Delete				
			Close			
			Close			

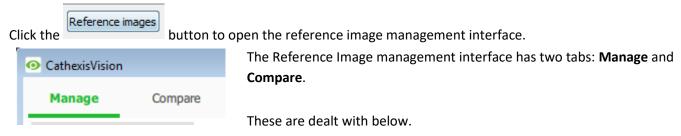
This window will open and, if any video analytics have been set up, they will appear here.

Click **New** to add new analytics to the camera, or click **Edit** to edit existing algorithms.

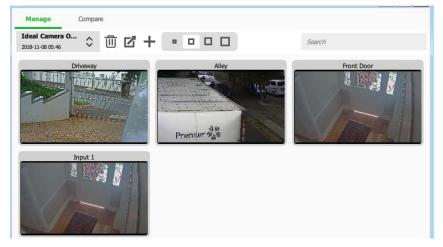
For more information on video analytics, please see the Video Analytics section.

2.6 Reference Images

Creating a reference image will capture the orientation of all system cameras and save images for reference later on. These reference images can then be compared to older reference images, as well as the current orientation of cameras, in order to determine possible differences. Reference images can also be exported for review.



2.6.1 <u>Manage Tab</u>



Here, reference images can be created, deleted, exported, searched, and reviewed.

If reference images have already been created, the most recent one will display its capture cards (reference images for system cameras).

See below for interface guide.



2.6.1.1 Select and View Existing Reference Image

Ideal Camera O	/
2018-11-08 05:46	~

ГЛ

Select between existing reference images using the drop-down menu. Click on any capture card to expand.

2.6.1.2 Manage Reference Images

Select a reference image from the drop-down menu and click this icon to delete it.

A prompt window will open, asking:



Select a reference image from the drop-down menu and click this icon to export it. A window will open which requires the selection of an export destination. Reference images for all cameras are saved as individual JPEG files to the selected destination.

Click to create a new reference image, which will capture images of the current orientation of all system cameras. A window will open.

Create reference point				
Descriptive Name				
	ОК	Cancel		

Give the reference image a descriptive name making it easier to identify and compare later on.

Click OK when done.

2.6.1.3 Capture Card Size



Select the desired display size of the reference image capture cards.

2.6.1.4 Search

Search

Perform a search for camera names to view capture cards. This is useful in larger sites with more cameras for which manually searching may be too time consuming.



2.6.2 Compare Tab

CathexisVision Manage C	ompare				
Ideal Camera L 2018-11-15 10:24	Current	Compare	• • • •	Search	

The Compare tab is where comparisons between reference images take place.

When a comparison has been done, capture card results are displayed in the blank space.

See interface guide below.

2.6.2.1 New Comparison

2.6.2.2 View Comparison Results

Descriptive Name	0	Now	0	\rangle
2018-11-08 05:59	*	-	•	/

To perform a new comparison, select two reference images (or 'Now') from the drop-

down list and click the arrow button

Comparisons can be performed between two existing reference images, or between a reference image and 'Now' – this being the orientation of the cameras as they are at this point in time (not a reference image).

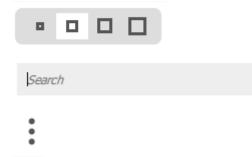
Note: Reference image comparison is now fixed when cameras have a large privacy zone.

Front Door Front Door Comera 104 Not found Therees Comera 104 Comera 104

The results will display the capture cards for each camera side-by-side while the number of differences found between them is shown on the right.

Click on the capture cards to expand and view the differences.

<u>Note</u>: If cameras are removed from the system between the creation of reference images, the results will display a 'Not found' capture card for the reference image that is missing the camera.



Select the desired display size of the reference image capture cards.

Perform a search for camera names to view comparison result capture cards for that camera.

Click to open the Options menu. Currently the only option is:



	:
Hide PTZ car	neras



3 Video Analytics 🥯

This is a guide to the Video Motion Detection setup process. In order to give a deeper understanding of the algorithm, and allow informed setup decisions, the individual parameters which are available to the user will be discussed in detail here.

It is important to remember that the setup process will be iterative, and requires 'tweaking' in order to get right. This is because VMD algorithms do not work in the same way as the human eye/brain combination. Rather, they observe changes in light intensity at the level of the individual pixel and use this to set off triggers. As a result, any changes in the image, such as clouds rushing over a field, or a flashing light, can cause a false trigger. These need to be adjusted on a situation by situation basis. In other words, there is no one-size-fits-all solution to video analytics setups.

Note:

- I. Algorithm names have changed in CathexisVision 2017.2:
 - a. Analytics I \rightarrow Basic Analytics.
 - b. Analytics II \rightarrow Intermediate Analytics.
 - c. Analytics III \rightarrow Advanced Analytics.
- II. Advanced Analytics will contain the Basic and Intermediate Analytics. So, if a camera is licensed with Analytics III, one need not add licenses for I and II, as they will already be included.
- III. The new **CathexisVision** video analytics algorithms, which were added in **CathexisVision** 2015, (licensed using Analytics I, II, and III) are only available on Linux and Windows NVRs.
- IV. Units running CathexisVision 2016 cannot connect forwards to units running CathexisVision 2017.2.
 Should this be attempted, a message will appear to update the GUI interface.
- V. When connecting from a 2017.2 unit backwards to a 2016 unit, the Top down head tracker algorithm (in the Analytics type analytics) and the Top down head counter (std) algorithm (in the Counting type analytics) will not be available as these two algorithms are not available in CathexisVision 2016.

3.1 Accessing Video Analytics

There are two ways to access the video analytics setup.

3.1.1 <u>Option 1: Via the</u> Cameras Panel

WIN7VIRTUAL (MASTER)
 Cameras

```
Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Cameras \rightarrow Select camera \rightarrow
Right/Click or click Video analytics button at the bottom of the tab.
```

<u>Note</u>: When adding algorithms in this window, the algorithm will only be associated with the camera clicked on.

3.1.2 Option 2: Via the Wideo analytics Panel

This will list all Algorithms that are related to cameras on this Server.

There are two ways to add analytics to a camera: copy-paste function or configure new analytics. These are dealt with below.



3.2 Copy-Paste Analytics

Existing Algorithm settings may be copy/pasted to overwrite algorithms on other cameras, or pasted onto cameras with no existing algorithms applied.

3.2.1 <u>Copy/Paste an Algorithm</u>

Copy/paste Algorithm settings either from one algorithm to another, or from one algorithm to a new camera. These settings may be copied across servers and even across sites (as long as both sites are running the same version of CathexisVision).

3.2.2 <u>Copy algorithm settings from one algorithm to another</u>

Right-click on an existing algorithm, and then click on Copy. Then right-click on the algorithm to overwrite and click Paste.

3.2.3 Copy Algorithm settings as a new algorithm

Here, copy the algorithm settings onto a camera, so right-click and Copy the existing algorithm. Then right-click anywhere and select Paste new... this will bring up a list of cameras that are attached to this unit (e.g. Analog One).

Select any number of cameras to paste the algorithm onto, and click OK.

3.3 Configure New Analytics

Right-click and select **New** or click the button to configure new analytics for a camera. See the new video analytics interface guide below for selecting analytics.

3.3.1 <u>New Video Analytics Selection Interface Guide</u>

	• New video analytics			×	Area	Description
	New video analytics New video analytics Initial video analytics details				1	Select the Camera that analytics will be added to.
1	Camera Axis F41 Type Motion detection				2	Select the broader video analytics Type .
(3)	Algorithm Basic VMD				3	Select the specific Algorithm to apply. Algorithm options differ according to analytics type selected (above).
		Next	Cance	el	4	A basic description of the features of the algorithm is provided in the description field .



3.3.2 <u>Select the Algorithm</u>

See the table below for an explanation of the Analytics Types and Algorithm options.

Analytics Type	Algorithm Options	Description
Type 3D	Top down head tracker Top down head tracker Top down head tracker Oblique head tracker	 Trigger events when heads cross a line using a 3D camera looking straight down. Trigger events when heads cross a line using a 3D camera mounted at an angle. For configuration, consult CathexisVision 3D Headcounter Appnote.
Type Analytics	Type Analytics Algorithm Basic analytics Provides Intermediate analytics • b Advanced analytics • b Top down head tracker Queue length Still object	Basic analytics: Offers event triggering using: - basic line crossing triggers and - basic presence triggers. Intermediate analytics Offers event triggering using: - advanced line crossing triggers and - advanced presence triggers. Advanced analytics: Offers event triggering using: - advanced presence triggers. Offers event triggering using: - advanced line crossing triggers, - advanced line crossing triggers, - advanced presence triggers, - advanced presence triggers, - speed detection, and - size and direction filters. Top down head tracker:
		 Offers event triggering when: heads cross a line using a standard colour camera looking straight down. Queue length: Offer event triggering when: a queue exceeds a certain length. Still Object Analytics: Offers event triggering when: An object has been left for a period of time.



Type Counting -	😡 Top down head counter (3D) 🗸	Top down head counter (3D):
Type Counting	Top down head counter (3D)	- Count heads crossing a line
	😡 Oblique head counter (3D)	using a 3D camera looking
Note:	Line counter Top down head counter (std)	straight down.
	V Top down head counter (std)	Note: To trigger events with head
None of the algorithms		counts, use the Line Counter or Top
within this analytics type		down head tracker algorithms. For help
can trigger events. See		with 3D camera analytics configurations,
each algorithm type with		consult CathexisVision 3D Headcounter
the correct alternative to		Appnote.
trigger events.		Oblique head counter (3D):
		- Count heads crossing a line
		using a 3D camera mounted at
		an angle.
		Note: To trigger events with head
		counts, use the Line Counter or Top
		down head tracker algorithms. For help
		with 3D camera analytics configurations,
		consult CathexisVision 3D Headcounter
		Appnote.
		Line counter:
		 Count objects crossing a line
		using a normal camera.
		Note: To trigger events when objects
		cross a line, use the Basic, Intermediate,
		or Advanced algorithm options within
		the Analytics type, above.
		Top down head counter (standard) :
		 Count heads crossing a line
		using a standard colour camera
		looking straight down.
		Note : To trigger events with top down
		head counts on a standard camera, use
		the Top down head tracker algorithm
		within the Analytics type, above.
		Basic VMD
Type Motion detection ▼	😡 Basic VMD 🔻	- Standard motion detection
	Basic VMD	algorithm.
	Smart VMD	Smart VMD:
		- Advanced motion detection
		algorithm designed for outdoor
		scenes.



	- Can filter out repetitive motion like tress or grass moving.

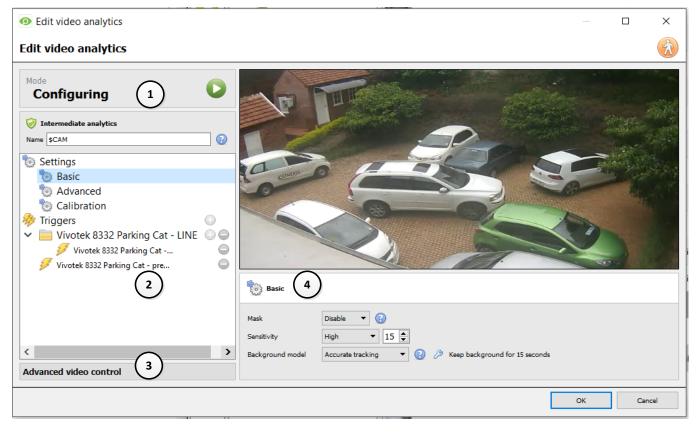
Once the analytics type is chosen, click Next to move onto configuring the analytics. See Section b. below.

3.4 Analytics Configuration Interface Guide

There are two modes/interfaces in the setup of the Analytics; **Configuration**, and **Running**. These will be explained below, before the specifics of each Algorithm are discussed.

3.4.1 <u>Configuration Interface</u>

This interface deals with configuring the analytics.



1	The current mode of the interface is indicated in the header. In the top right of this panel, there will
	be the 💟 icon. Click this to switch to the Running interface.
2	This area will be called the configuration panel . At the top of the panel will be the name of the
	algorithm and its current licensing state (relative to the camera it has been assigned to).
	It will also list the name of the algorithm. The "\$CAM" at the beginning of the algorithm name will
	place the name of the camera it has been assigned to at the beginning of its name. This is useful to
	export and import algorithm names that immediately assume the name of the camera that it has
	been imported into.



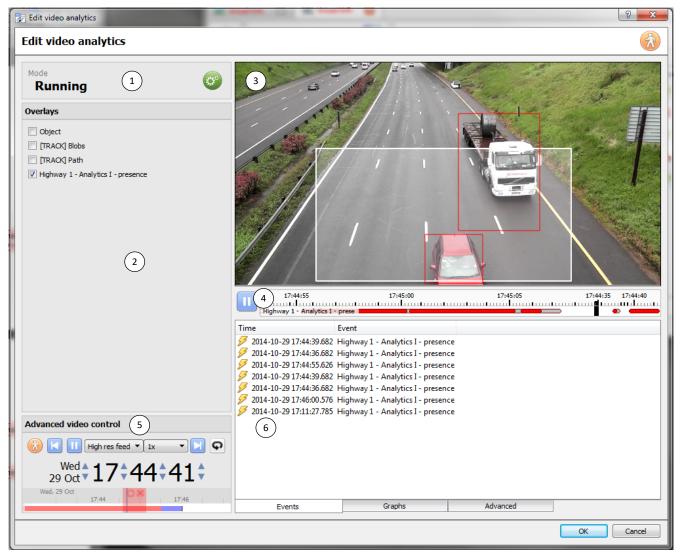
	f settings options. While Ana	is algorithm. The different algorithm sets will alytics I, II, and III share the same settings
which algorithm is being used	d. To add a new trigger, clicl	rs for the selected algorithm, after choosing a on the 😳 icon, to remove a trigger click on more information see the Events Setup
3 Advanced video control To expand this player, hover	and Running interfaces. the mouse over the text of ht of the text. Click on this t	
3.4.1.1.1 Live Video: The default (in the above imated and a control and	es feed 🔹	will start streaming live video from the camera in the Camera panel. There is the option of viewing the high- resolution feed, or the one used for video analytics.
3.4.1.1.2 Recorded Video Clicking on the (database Advanced video control (database High res feed Wed 17 29 Oct 17	e) icon will take navigate to	the recorded video for this camera. Use the wheel arrows on the timestamp to change the date of the footage being viewed. Or left-click and drag on the timeline at the bottom of the player.
		Clicking 🚳 will return to the live player.
Looping video selections is a objectively see if a setting cha		especially when testing algorithm settings; orithm.



	This is achieved by holding down shift while left-clicking-dragging out a selection on the timeline.
	Once the portion of timeline is selected click on 主, it will turn into an 💽 icon. It will now loop
	over the selected section of video, instead of playing continuously.
	<u>Note</u> : This selection will transfer across from the Configuration to Running interfaces, and vice versa.
(4)	The Context Area will display the contextual information/options for whatever is selected in the
0	Configuration Panel.

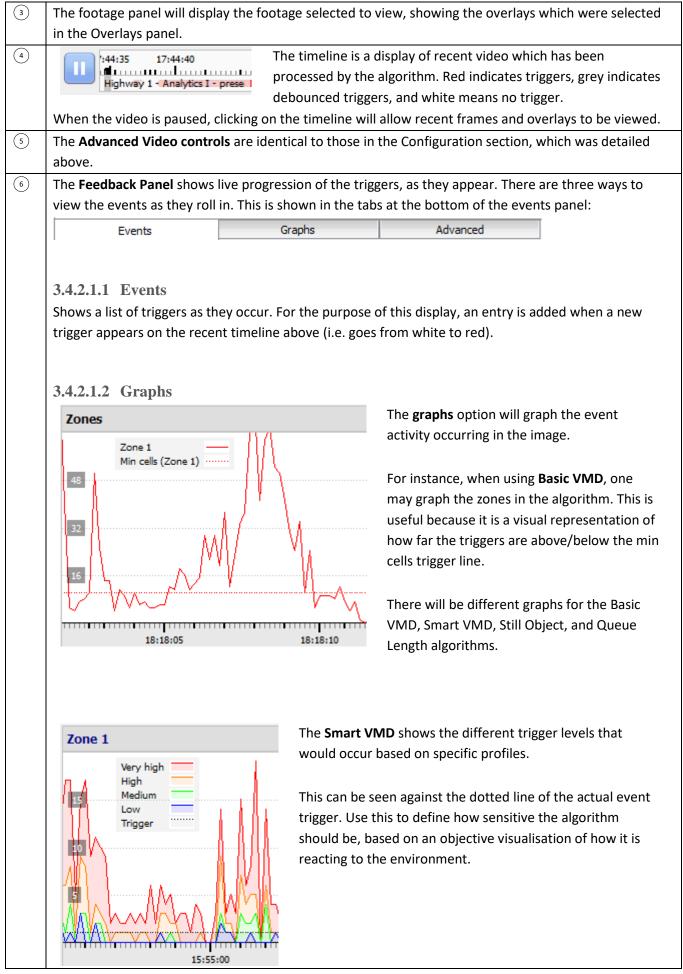
3.4.2 <u>Running Interface</u>

The running interface is used to test the settings already defined, in the Configuration interface. It will allow seeing the algorithm, as it has been programmed, in action. Either using live video, or a selection of recorded video.

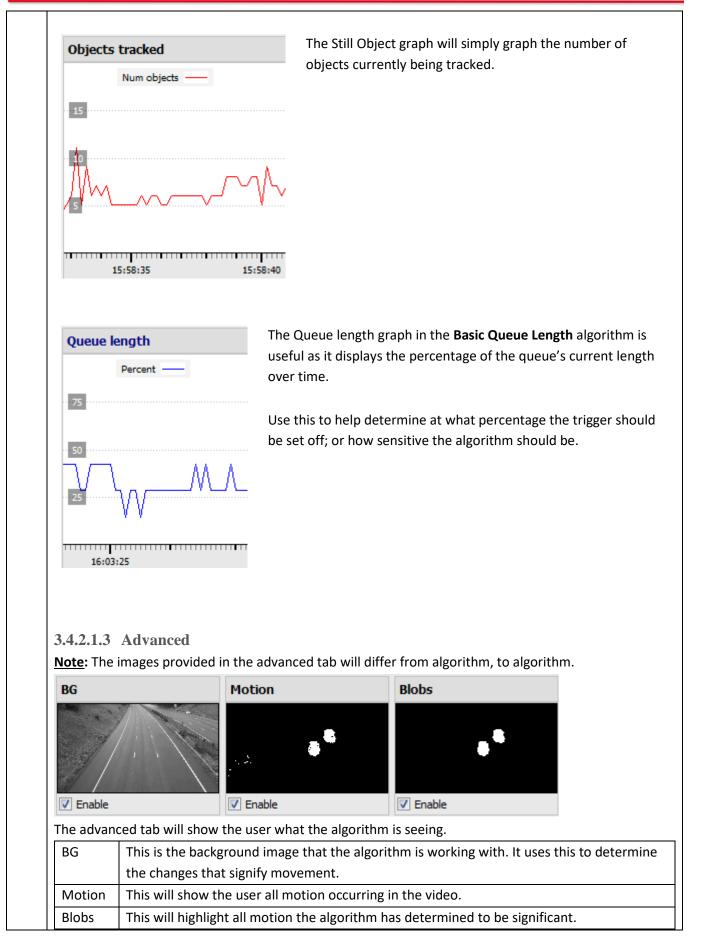


1	The current mode of the interface is indicated in the header. In the top right of this panel is the icon. Click this to switch back to the configuration interface.
2	In the Overlays panel are the overlays that are contextually relevant to the algorithm configured. To select an overlay, check the 🗹 box next to its name.











3.5 Basic VMD

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Video Analytics \rightarrow New \rightarrow Motion Detection type \rightarrow Basic VMD.

Basic VMD is designed to trigger when there is motion in an area. It works by breaking the image up into small cells (the size of a single cell can be seen by drawing a mask with the brush set to the smallest size). If there is motion in a certain percentage of the cell, it is considered to have triggered. The percentage is controlled by the **sensitivity** - a high sensitivity will require a lower percentage of the cell to trigger, compared with a lower sensitivity.

Motion is determined by comparing the incoming image with a background image, which is built up as the algorithm runs. Differences between the background and foreground images constitute motion. There are a number of options available for modelling how the background image is created:

Historical, Travelling average, Accurate, and Long term (these will be dealt with in more detail, below).

If any background model changes are made, it is recommended that the "Advanced" tab in the Feedback panel be used to understand how the background tracks the foreground.

3.5.1 <u>Zones</u>

हैं्रि Zones	
Name	Sensitivity Min cells Max cells
Zone 1	Super high 🔻 1 🖨 1600 🖨 🧕
Zone 2	Super high 🔻 1 🌲 1600 荣 🧃

In the configuration panel of the "Edit video analytics" window, Zones can be found under the Settings option. Selecting this provides the information shown in the image to the left, within the Context Area. Create multiple zones, each with their own sensitivity, and min/max cell settings.

Min cells is the smallest number of VMD cells needed to have changed for the algorithm to trigger.

A good example of why zones are necessary is a border fence. The perspective of the receding fence means that a human 200m away from the camera will take up far less pixel space than a human 10m away. This means that being able to set up different zones with increasing/decreasing sensitivity is very valuable. In this same example, being able to set up both a minimum cell value, and a maximum cell value, for triggers is also invaluable.

3.5.1.1 Drawing Zones

To **create a new zone**, click on New zone, at the bottom of the **Context Area**. Select the new zone by clicking on the name of the zone.



To draw a new zone into the image, use the **Zone Drawing Tools** at the top of the Camera Panel.



Will paint the entire image with the zone.



Will scrub the zone from the image.

Will drop-down a menu with a number of zone brush size options.

Paintings are done by holding down left-click while dragging out the desired shape of the zone.

3.5.2 <u>Advanced</u>

3.5.2.1 Background Model

්ලා Advance	
Background model Accurate tracki 🔻 🔞 🤌	
Noise suppression Medium 🔹 🔞	

In the configuration panel of the "Edit video analytics" window, Advanced can be found under the Settings option. Selecting this provides the information shown in the image to the left, within the Context Area.

Accurate tracking (default). This operates much like the traveling average method except that if there is a big change in an area, it retains the original background until such time as the foreground stabilises. How it does this can be controlled by clicking the wrench icon below. 'Background memory' sets how long it remembers the background, and 'Background threshold' sets the region within which it smoothly adjusts the background.

Fixed Lighting. Builds up a background by looking at snapshots of the scene over an extended period. This can only be used if the lighting remains constant (e.g. controlled indoor environment). The frequency and number of snapshots used can be changed by clicking on the wrench below.

Travelling average. This smoothly adjusts the background image towards the foreground.

Legacy. This is the method used in CathexisVision 2014 and earlier.

Click to display information about the selected options.

Click to configure Advanced Background Model settings.

<u>Note</u>: Adaptive noise suppression is configured in the Advanced Background Model Settings window. Information is provided below on adaptive noise suppression.



3.5.2.2 Noise Suppression:

Controls how sensitive a pixel is to being triggered. Increasing the noise suppression reduces sensitivity.

3.5.2.2.1 Adaptive Noise Suppression

The **Adaptive noise suppression** is designed to help eliminate repetitive motion such as waving trees or the waves on water. To configure adaptive noise suppression, click the Advanced Background Model Settings icon

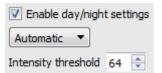
B

The adaptive noise suppression splits the image into noise zones and evaluates each noise zone individually. The options are to split it into 1, 2x2, 3x3,4x4, and 5x5 noise zones. Setting it to 5x5 zones will have the noise treated more independently throughout the image.

3.5.3 <u>Day/night</u>

In the configuration panel of the "Edit video analytics" window, Day/Night can be found under the Settings option. Lighting conditions will obviously change depending on what time of day it is. These changes can be disruptive to the motion detection algorithms, which is why **CathexisVision** provides alternate settings for day and night. If day/night is enabled, then the settings can be set to different values for day and night.

3.5.3.1 Automatic



3.5.3.2 Timed

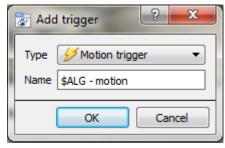
Timed	-	
	Day start Night star	
June	06h00 🔻	18h00 🔻
December	06h00 🔻	18h00 🔻

The intensity threshold is a number from 0 to 255, which represents the variable brightness level of what a pixel can achieve. This determines at what brightness level the settings switch from day to night mode.

Timed Day/Night settings will be the easiest to set up.

There are two periods of the year to set.

3.5.4 Triggers



Triggers can be found in the configuration panel of the "Edit video analytics" window. There is only one trigger option under Basic VMD, and that is "Motion trigger".

The **Name** here is the name that was given to the algorithm. It is this name which will be databased when this algorithm triggers an event.



Once added, left-click on the trigger to see the Context Area options:

VMD trigger \$ALG - motion	Hold trigger for 1000 ms
☑ Use advanced settings	Overlay Symbol and time 💌
Trigger if there is <u>motion</u> in <u>any zone</u> (<u>trigger immediately</u> Operate on <u>all zones</u>	2

Unless the **Use advanced settings** option is checked, there will be nothing here.

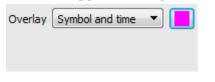
3.5.4.1 Zone Settings

```
✓ Use advanced settings
Trigger if there is <u>motion</u> in <u>any zone</u> (<u>trigger immediately</u>)
Operate on <u>all zones</u>
```

Click on the hyperlinks to see the variable options for each setting here.

<u>Note</u>: A trigger of 'no motion' can also take into account zone selection.

3.5.4.2 Trigger Overlay



The overlay will appear on the camera panel in the configuration interface as a small square, in the colour selected:

Reposition it by left-click dragging it.



The overlay will appear, when the algorithm is running. It will show the symbol for the event, and the amount of time, in seconds that the event has been running.

3.6 Smart VMD

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Video Analytics \rightarrow New \rightarrow Motion Detection type \rightarrow Smart VMD.

3.6.1 Differences between Smart and Standard VMD

Smart VMD is specifically designed to work in more dynamic environments than Standard VMD. It uses a number of methods to learn environmental noise patterns, and filter them, to avoid false alarms. The following guide will explain how Smart VMD does this, and in the process, how to set it up.

The major differences between **Smart VMD** and **Basic VMD** are:

- 1. The way in which the background is learned. **Smart VMD** uses its own unique background model.
- 2. The way the trigger threshold is calculated for a pixel in the image. **Basic VMD** uses a fixed threshold which is modified by the noise suppression. Smart VMD uses a dynamic threshold which learns from repetitive motion in the environment to offer substantially better noise rejection characteristics.

3.6.2 <u>Zones</u>

The zone settings for Smart VMD are identical to those described above, for Basic VMD.



3.6.3 Advanced Settings

by Advanced	
Profile Default	•
Background noise	Moderate (long grass)
Track lighting changes	Slowly
Remember motion for	15sec 🍨
ß	

Profile	Selecting a profile will automatically configure the parameters, which can then be manually
	altered. See below, for a table comparing the profiles and the associated configurations.
Tracking	This configures how the background model responds to incremental changes in the lighting in
Light	the scene caused by things like clouds moving overhead. The faster the setting, the less
Changes	sensitive the algorithm will become.
Background	This indicates how much background noise to expect in the scene (noise being defined as
noise	fluctuations in intensity caused by things like grass moving or possibly noise from the camera
	sensor). The less noise there is, the more responsive the algorithm can be to changes. Most
	scenes will do well with this set to low or moderate background noise.
Remember	Once there has been motion in an area, it won't retrigger until this period of time has passed.
Motion	Making this period of time long, will reduce the overall sensitivity of the algorithm, but also
	allows it to more easily mask out things like trees blowing in the wind.

3.6.3.1.1 Profile Comparison

The table below is a comparison of the default profile settings.

	Default	Short Grass	Long Grass
Flare	20% pp change of 2	5% pp change of 2	5% pp change of 2
Noise Filter (First option in the Flares Tab)	NA	1 or more cells in previous 5 frames	1 or more cells in previous 5 frames
Background noise/Min Threshold	Moderate [long grass]	Low [Short Grass]	Moderate [Long Grass]
Track Light Changes	Slowly [1]	Fast [Clouds] [2]	Fast [Clouds] [3]



Motion Memory [Max Decay	40 seconds/ 255	3 seconds	5 seconds
Countdown]	frames		

3.6.3.2 Advanced Settings Continued 🌽

Clicking on the 🌽 will open the advanced options, of the Advanced Settings.

Advanced Flares	Advanced Flares
Gamma 1.0 👤	Only trigger if 1 ÷ or more cells have had motion in the previous 1 ÷ frames
Background noise Moderate (long grass) 🔻	Don't trigger in the frame and subsequent 0 🚔 frames after:
	there is motion in more than 5 <a> % of the image
Track lighting changes Slowly	the maximum cells are exceeded in
Remember motion for 15sec 🖨	Zone 1
Threshold decay rate Slow	Zone 2
Minimum threshold	Zone 3
	the average brightness changes by 1.0 🐑 pp or more in consecutive frames
Threshold plus 10 🜩	
Threshold minus 5	

Gamma	Gamma is a brightening tool that works on a gradient. In other words, it brightens the dark
	parts the most, and the lightest parts the least. This causes an evenly brightened image with no
	overexposed areas, and no dark patches.
Threshold	This sets how the speed at which the threshold drops back to ambient levels, or, to the
Decay	Minimum Threshold setting.
Rate	
Minimum	
Threshold	
Threshold	These advanced settings are only for use in conjunction with CathexisVision support. For more
Plus	information contact <u>support@cat.co.za</u> .
Threshold	
Minus	
Flares	The first option, Only trigger if x or more is really a noise filter. It requires a set amount of
	motion in a set number of previous frames [minimum] to set off an alarm.



Don't trigger... will prevent the flare frame, and frames immediately after from triggering an event.

In the **Average Brightness** setting 'pp' stands for percentage points. This setting measures the average change in brightness between two consecutive frames. The maximum setting is 10 percentage points. At this setting, if there is a total change in brightness of over 10% then the change will be considered a flare.

Note: the 10% max may seem small, but it is in fact a large average change for any image. 2% to 3% may be considered a substantial lighting change.

3.6.4 <u>Day/Night</u>

The Day/Night settings for Smart VMD are identical to the Day/Night settings for Basic VMD, above.

3.7 Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced Analytics

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Video Analytics \rightarrow New \rightarrow Analytics type \rightarrow Basic/Intermediate/Advanced.

The three Analytics suites all share the same options for Basic, Advanced, and Calibration Settings.

3.7.1 <u>Basic</u>

Basic	
Mask	Disable 🔻 🕢
Sensitivity	High 🔻 15 🜩
Background model	Accurate 🔻 🤌 Keep background for 15 seconds

Mask	The mask defines the areas of the camera image to which the algorithm will be applied.
	It may be useful to hide busy, areas from the algorithm to prevent false triggers. 'Entire
	scene' is selected by default.
	Edit Tracking Area



	Move control point: Click and drag.
	New control point: CTRL-click on a line.
	Remove control point: Double-click control point.
	Move mask: Left-click and drag (not on a control point).
Sensitivity	This will define the algorithms response to changes in the image. Select a pre-defined sensitivity level or set a custom level (max 50).
Background model	For the algorithm to know that something has changed in the image, it needs to have a predefined "normal" to work with. This is the background. The background model will define how long this is calculated.
	Note : Background model settings are only available in the Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced algorithms (within the Analytics type of analytics).

3.7.1.1 Background Model

If either Basic, Intermediate, or Advanced algorithms within the Analytics type analytics are chosen, the user will be able to select a background model.

Setting: Basic Advanced Calibration Triggers		Under Settings , on the left of the window, select the Basic settings
Please add a trigger		option.
		bettings
	Basic	🐌 Basic
< >	Mask Disable V (2) FeedWidty Vigh 15 Background model Accurate tracking V (2) /2 Keep background for 15 seconds	
Background model Accurate tracking	▼ 🕢 🄑 Keep background for 15 seconds	
Select the Background Model:	Accurate tracking Accurate tracking Fixed lighting Dynamic	

Click the to display information about the selected background model. This information is useful in deciding which model will be best suited to which conext.

Click the 🥙 to further configure either the Accurate Tracking or Fixed Lighting background models.

3.7.1.1.1 Accurate Tracking Settings



Click 💿 to display information about	• Accurate tracking ×
accurate tracking.	General purpose algorithm which continually tracks and adjusts for lighting and scene changes to detect motion. It works well • indoors • outdoors where there is not too much repetitive motion • with thermal imaging cameras.
	ОК
Click 🤌 to configure accurate tracking.	
Accurate tracking ? ×	Note: These are advanced settings and it is recommended to
Background memory 15 sec ? Background threshold 20 ? Background tracking 2 ? Background increment 2 ? Foreground threshold 20 ? Foreground threshold 20 ? Foreground threshold 20 ? Foreground threshold 20 ? Foreground lock 6 frames ? Foreground switch 30 frames ? Defaults OK Cancel	leave these as default, and contact <u>support@cat.co.za</u> for any additional help.

3.7.1.1.2 Fixed Lighting Settings

Click (2) to display information about fixed lighting.	 Fixed lighting × Algorithm for static scenes with controlled lighting which does not change over time. It constantly updates its view of the scene by analysing frames taken over a configurable time period (typically 10 or 15 minutes) This only works well <u>indoors</u> with consistent artificial light!
Click to configure fixed lighting.	<u>Note</u> : These are advanced settings and it is recommended to leave these as default, and contact <u>support@cat.co.za</u> for any additional help.

3.7.2 <u>Advanced</u>



Size filter	Disabled	\sim	2
Source size	Small	\sim	2
Tracking point	Bottom	\sim	2
Use colour	No	\sim	2
Flare suppression	Disabled	\sim	2
Image stabilisation	Disabled	\sim	2
Classifier	Disabled	\sim	2
Default paths over	ау		
Default counting o	verlay		
Advanced propert	y editor		

Note: Click the next to any of the settings to display information about it.

Size Filter	Filter out objects smaller than the minimum size.
	Minimum width0.20m +Minimum height0.20m +When enabled, the minimum width and height optionswill be added to the interface.
	Note: This is only implemented in CathexisVision 2016 and later; when connecting to an older software version this option will be present, but ineffective.
Source size	This determines how the video stream is scaled before processing. Small or Medium are sensible selections. Larger images substantially increase the processing load on the system, usually for marginal benefits.
Tracking point	This sets where on the bounding box objects are tracked. By default, they are tracked at the bottom of the bounding box, as this corresponds to the feet of a person or the wheels of a car.
Use colour	This enables the algorithm to use colour for:
	Tracking objects within the image.
	Suppressing shadows.
Flare Suppression	Enable this option to discard false motion as a result of intense changes in brightness levels.
Image	This enables image stabilisation for cases where camera shake is a problem.
stabilisation	Important note: This should not be enabled by default, because it places a heavy load
	on the processor of the computer.
Classifier	Enable this option to classify tracked objects. Object classifications can also be
	databased. See below for enabling and databasing object classifications.
	Note: This places a heavy load on the processor.
	29 May 2020



Default paths	Allows the user to choose between a default object path overlay, and a user defined
overlay	one.
Default counting	Allows the user to choose between a default object path overlay, and a user defined
overlay	one.
Advanced	This section is included in the software for support purposes only, and is very technical.
Property Editor	As a rule of thumb, if the user does not understand the option presented, then no
	editing should be performed.

• Object Classifier

CathexisVision offers object classification and databasing of classification. To enable object classification, select **Enable** from the drop-down menu and then define the following parameters that appear.

Note:

- 1. Recordings must be enabled on the camera that video analytics are being applied to in order to review classifier information.
- 2. Unless a specific object classification database is created and enabled, classifications will not be databased. Database is dealt with below classifier settings description.

Classifier	Enabled V			~ 😨
Model		mobilene	t_v1_coco	· ~ 🕜
Confidence threshold		Low		~ 🕐
Processing free	quency	Medium		~ 🕐
Database		Enabled		~ 🕐
Minimum persis	tence	1sec	* *	0

Select the **classification model**. Only one is currently available.

Select the **confidence threshold**; the confidence that an object has been classified correctly. Objects with a confidence level lower than the configured threshold will not be databased (but will still be classified and displayed in overlays, if enabled).

Select the **processing frequency** (frequency at which attempts to classify objects will be made). <u>Note</u>: increasing this will increase the load on the processer.

Enable or disable the **databasing** of object classifications.

Note: A specific database must be created for object classifications and this is dealt with below.

Set the **minimum persistence** (in seconds): This is the minimum time that an object must be on the scene in order to be considered for databasing.

3.7.2.1.1 Overlay Information

A specific classifier information overlay may be enabled in addition to the object tracker overlays.

Enabling this information overlay will provide the following details related to the classified object:

- Object ID.
- Object width and height.
- Speed of the object.
- Object classification with corresponding confidence rating from 0 1 (depending on what is enabled).
- Estimated object colour.

To enable an additional classifier information overlay, click the Advanced property editor button.



Overlays							En
info_enable	enable $$	2	info_permanent	enable	\sim	A.	inf

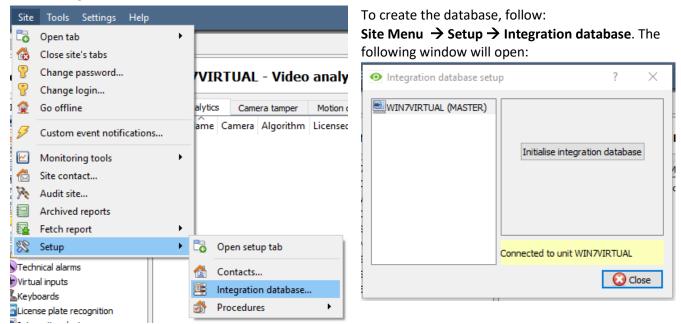
Enable both **info_enable** and **info_permanent**.

Click OK to close.

3.7.2.1.2 Create Object Classification Database

A database is necessary if object classifications need to be stored. See below for navigating to and creating the database.

Note: If using, make sure Database is enabled, above.



If no integration databases have been created, the integration database will need to be initialised. Click

Initialise integration database

Initialise integra	ation database	? ×
Partition		C:\(C:\) ~
Total space available	:	1410 MB
Disk space allocated	to integration database	1000MB
	с	K Cancel
 Integration data 	base setup	? ×
WIN7VIRTUAL (M		
	New I	Edit Delete
		Close

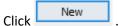
In the initialisation window, select the partition and size of the integration database.

Click **OK** when done.

The database will initialise and the CathexisVision server will restart itself for the change to take effect.

The window will change immediately.

Now the object classifier database must be created.



In the window that opens, set the following:



Oreate databas	se	nabieu Piaus	?	×	Give the o name.
Database name Size (Max: 500 MB) Driver	Object Classifier 100 MB Object Trackers (1.1.1)		•	Set the siz Select the down list.
	C	ОК	Cancel		Click OK w
 Integration databatic 	ase setup	ы	?	×	The datab
WIN7VIRTUAL	1 Object Classifier :	Size(mb) Enable			Click Close
	nnected to unit WIN7		Clos	e i	
Seriedaies					

Give the object classifier database a descriptive name. Set the **size of the database**. Select the Object Trackers (1.1) driver from the drop-

Click **OK** when done.

The database is now listed.

Click Close.

Once the requisite video analytics have been configured, the object classifier has been enabled and the database has been setup, camera recordings with associated object classification information may be reviewed in the integration database.

To open the object classification database, follow one of the two paths:

- 1. Site Menu → Open Tab → Databases, or
- 2. Right-click site tab \rightarrow open tab \rightarrow Databases.

The object classification database operates like the general integration database. For operational information, please consult the operator's manual.

3.7.3 Calibration



Calibration	
Basic Image: Second state stat	Set defaults

The calibration is used to help determine the size of objects in the image. It uses a number of parameters to do so.

3.7.3.1 Basic Calibration

Basic			
Distance from	n camera to line 🔻 is 20.0m		
Grid 1x1 metr	e 🔻		
Distance	From camera to line		
	Set the actual distance between the position of the camera and the yellow line in the image. The		
	line can be moved, by clicking on it, and dragging it.		
	Between lines		
Estimate the distance between the two lines that appear in the camera image.			
Grid	The grid is just a visual overlay to help place the image of a shaded person on the screen.		

Adjusting the depth of field of the image

This is done by dragging the human shapes to 2 different locations (near and far) and resizing them appropriately.



<u>Note</u>: It is suggested to only use the advanced calibration settings when there is very accurate data about the settings required.

Advanced	Reset overlay Set defau
Camera	Positioning
Aspect ratio 4x3 (VGA)	Height 3.0m
Configuration Zoom	Angle 25° 🚖
Zoom percent 100% 🛬	

Advanced Calibration adds a number of options.

Aspect ratio	This refers to the shape of the camera image. The b	pelow image provides an idea of the	
Advanced	aspect ratio being looked at. Though, the camera itself describes what the aspect ratio is:		
Calibration	16:9	3:2 4:3 5:4	
Configuration	This is where the viewing angle is defined. Either by angle , or a combination of sensor size and focal len		
Height	The height of the camera off of the ground.		
Angle	The angle of the camera to the ground, 0 degrees as the level point.		

3.7.4 <u>Triggers</u>

Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced Analytics are differentiated by their trigger options, with the Basic type having only basic triggers, and Advanced allowing more advanced trigger definition. Trigger options (below) will determine on the analytics type selected.

To add a trigger, click the ⁽⁾ icon next to the Triggers section and select the desired trigger from the drop-down menu.

Certain trigger types will need to be further defined by adding additional triggers. See below.

• Ad	ld trigger	?	×
Туре	🕖 I. Basic line tr	igger	\sim
Name	 I. Basic line t I. Basic prese II. Advanced II. Advanced 	ence trigge l area trigg	ers -
	🦲 III. Speed tri	ggers	- 1



3.7.4.1 Basic Line Trigger

Available with Basic, Intermediate and Advanced Analytics.

This will trigger an event when an object crosses over the line in one, or both directions. After adding the trigger, the Direction option will appear in the Context Area:

Direction Both directions click on the drop-down menu to change the direction options. The arrows, on the camera image, will change accordingly.

3.7.4.1.1 Placing the Trigger

To place the trigger, left-click on one of the control points at the end of the line. Lengthen, and pivot, the line against the control point at the other end of the line.

3.7.4.2 Basic Presence Trigger

Available with Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced Analytics.

This basic algorithm will trigger while an object is within the defined mask. The only changeable setting on this trigger is the mask.

3.7.4.2.1 Editing the mask:

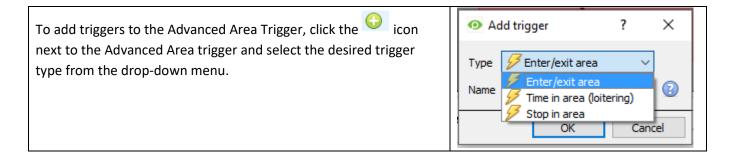
- Once enabled, manipulate the mask by clicking on the control points, and dragging them to move the corners of the mask.
- Holding CTRL and clicking a point on one of the lines, will add a new control point.
- Double clicking on a control point will remove it.
- To move the whole mask, without changing its shape, left-click and hold anywhere on the mask that **isn't** a control point, and move the mouse.

Note: the part of the image covered in the mask will be the part where the algorithm is active.

3.7.4.3 Advanced Area Triggers

Available with Intermediate and Advanced Analytics.

Adding an "Advanced Area Triggers" group allows one to define an area which can be used by one or more triggers. This is useful because the area is only drawn once. Once this trigger is added, it needs to be defined by adding further triggers.



3.7.4.3.1 Enter/Exit Trigger



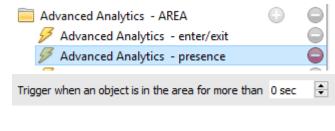
Triggers Itighway 2 - AR		0 0 c)
💋 Highway 2 -	enter/e	exit 🧲)
Trigger if an object	leaves	the area	_
		enters	
		leaves	
		enters or leaves	

This will trigger when an object enters/leaves (or a combination of the two) the area. This is defined in the area beneath the mask area.

Choose between triggering the event when an object enters the area, exits the area, or both. The trigger occurs at the point when the object crosses the boundary.

<u>Note</u>: the part of the image covered in the mask will be the part where the algorithm is active. To edit the mask, see 3.8.4.2.1.

3.7.4.3.2 Time in Area (Loitering)



3.7.4.3.3 Stop in Area

🦲 Advanced Analytics - AREA 🛛 🔅	
🕖 Advanced Analytics - stop	
-	_
Trigger if an object stops for more than 5 sec 🚖	
Tolerance Default	

This triggers when an object has remained within the area for a prescribed period of time.

In the area beneath the mask, define the period of time an object should remain in the area.

This triggers when an object has remained within the area for a prescribed period of time.

Set how long an object must be stationary for, before it triggers.

Tolerance is how far/much the object is allowed to move, while still considered to be stopped. It is measured in Pixels.

3.7.4.3.4 Object Filter

The Advanced Area Trigger allows for object filtering on triggers which are added to the area. This means that the objects which will trigger in the area can be filtered to only trigger on objects of certain heights/widths/directions/speed.

Select the triggers in the settings panel, and then tick Object filter in the Context Area.



Once Object filter is ticked, the Track objects options will appear.

Select the filters to apply to trigger objects, and specify each according to requirements.



Available with Intermediate and Advanced Analytics.

Like the Advanced Area Trigger, this is a group under which triggers can be placed, sharing the same line.

- To add a control point to the Advanced Line Trigger, hold down CTRL while clicking anywhere on the line.
- To move a control point hold down left-click on that point, while moving the mouse.

3.7.4.4.1 Line Trigger

Trigger if line is crossed in either direction	Define which direction will trigger the line.
a forward	
a reverse	
either	
Hold trigger for 1000 ms	Define how long to hold the trigger (in ms).

3.7.4.4.2 Line Counter

Count if line is crossed in	<u>either</u> direction	Define which direction will trigger the count
	a forward	
	a reverse	
	either	
🗹 Overlay 🤌		Check to enable counting overlay, and click 🤌 to configure overlays.

Configure Counting Overlays



 Configure over 	lay ? $ imes$		
Use default settings			
Style	Rounded box \sim		
Text			
Text size	Medium \sim		
Text color			
Background color			
Background opacity	50% ~		
Reset counters	Never ~		
OK Cancel			

Check box to use default overlay configuration, uncheck to edit.

Define the Style of the counting overlay.
Enter Text to precede the count in the overlay.
Define the Text Size.
Define the Text Colour.
Define the background colour of the counting overlay.
Define the Background opacity (0 being transparent and 100 being completely opaque) of the counting overlay.
Define when to reset the count (never/hourly/daily).

3.7.4.4.3 Object Filter

As with Advanced Area Triggers, the Advanced Line Trigger allows for object filtering on both line counters and triggers. Please see section 3.8.4.3.4.

Objects which will trigger when they cross the line can be filtered to only trigger on objects of certain heights/widths/directions/speed.

Select the line/counter triggers in the settings panel, and then tick

in the Context Area.

Track objects	Once Object filter is ticked, the Track objects options will
with width <i>greater than</i> 1.0m 🗘	appear.
with height <i>greater than</i> 1.0m ≑	Select the filters to apply to trigger objects, and specify each
using direction (<i><u>unidirectional</u></i>)	according to requirements.
travelling <i>faster than</i> 10 🔶 <u>kph</u>	

3.7.4.5 Speed Triggers

Available with Advanced Analytics.

Click the conto add a new trigger, and select the Speed trigger from the drop-down menu. Configure the general speed trigger settings, and then add a further speed range trigger to the speed trigger (see below).

3.7.4.5.1 General Speed Trigger Settings

Show speed in	kph 🔻	
Distance	20.0m 🚖	

The distance here is the distance between the two lines seen on the camera image.

<u>Note</u>: How well this works will depend on how accurate the distance between the lines is.



3.7.4.5.2 Speed Range Trigger Settings



Configure the trigger to trigger if the speed is within a certain speed range in a particular direction. Click the blue hyperlinks to change the parameters.

Define how long to hold the trigger (in ms).

3.8 Queue Length Analytics

This algorithm can be set to monitor the length of a queue, and trigger an event when a queue reaches a certain length. This would be useful, for example, in a shopping centre, to alert a manager that they need more cashiers working the tills.

Sensitivity	High 🔻 🕢	
Trigger area	35% 🜩 📃 🔞)
Background memory	22 sec 🚔 🦳 🕢 👔)

The image on the left is shown in the Context Area when selecting the settings.

Sensitivity sets how responsive the algorithm is to movement in the image.

Trigger area is the percentage of pixels that need to trigger (within the 4*4 pixel blocks that the algorithm uses) in order for the algorithm to also trigger.

Memory is how long it remembers the background.

3.8.1 Adding/Editing a Zone

By default, there are three zones which comprise the queue area. **To add a zone**, double-click inside the area of one of the zones. This will split it in half. To merge two zones together, double click on the line dividing the two zones.



3.8.1.1 Front and Back Zones

The green zone must always be set at the beginning of the queue, and the red zone must be set at the end of the queue.

<u>Note</u>: The green and red zones cannot be divided.

3.8.2 <u>Triggers</u>

Trigger if queue is 50 🗧 % full for 2.0 🚔 seconds

In the Context Area, after adding a trigger, set both the percentage and time that the queue needs to be full for, before a trigger is engaged.

3.9 Still Object

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Video Analytics \rightarrow New \rightarrow Analytics type \rightarrow Still object algorithm.

Still Object Detection is used to monitor introduced, or removed, stationary objects. This means that an object that was stationary in the image, such as a painting, will trigger the Still Object Detection (SOD) when removed.



An object that is introduced into the camera view will also trigger the Still Object Detection, such as a car that parks in a handicapped parking zone. It can be used in any number of situations. For example: airports to monitor busy areas where people might leave a bomb, handicapped parking, stock areas etc.

As with other algorithms, the **Still Object Detection** does not detect objects in the same way that a human eye/brain does; instead it measures the change in the light intensity level of an individual pixel over time. In doing this, it identifies 'blobs' of intensity change. If a blob is big enough and still enough, the algorithm will begin a countdown to determine whether it is stationary. Once this countdown stops, the algorithm will trigger. This trigger can be linked to any one of the events mentioned above.

It is important to note that, as with all of the Video Motion algorithms, the setup process will be iterative. The user will have to adjust them to suit the environment, and the objects being tracked. For this reason, the following guide does not provide a list of generic settings. But it will provide the meanings of the different terms, and explain how the algorithm works, so as to allow the user to understand, and make intelligent and informed adjustments.

3.9.1 Settings Panel

Select Settings on the left of the window, and configure the settings options which appear.

3.9.1.1 Choose Algorithm Type

Choose between the (updated) Background based Still Object algorithm, and the Legacy algorithm. The settings options will differ according to the algorithm chosen.



3.9.1.1.1 Legacy Settings

Settings							
Sensitivity	200						
Minimum size	35 🜩						
Gamma	1.0 束						
Scale factor	5 🜩						
Dwell time	30 sec 🔹 🖳						
Obscure period	100 frames 🚔						

Sensitivity	This setting (between 50-250) reflects the actual light intensity changes on the pixel.
	Each pixel is capable of producing light of 256 different levels of intensity. The sensitivity setting will measure the change from this historical image to the current image. The change in intensity will be reflected as a value between 1 and 256. 50 is considered the



	smallest significant change in object detection, and 250 is the highest likely change that would occur.
	Remember this is not the actual intensity of the pixel; it is the amount of change in intensity. So, if the pixel was at 50, and then jumped to 110 the change would be 60. If sensitivity is set to 50, this change would be considered significant.
Minimum size	This reflects the smallest an object can be, to be considered when triggering an alarm. As the slider moves, an image will appear on the screen approximating the area needed to be taken up by the object.
Gamma	Gamma changes the brightness and contrast of an image. The important way that gamma changes these settings is that it changes them on a curve. Increasing the gamma will brighten darker areas, but have little effect on already bright areas. This will allow the elimination of shadows. If the objects being tracked are generally a similar colour to the background they are set in, then there should be a higher gamma setting (>10).
	Decreasing gamma will darken lighter areas and have little effect on darker regions of the image. If the objects being tracked are generally lighter than the background, it is often useful to darken the gamma.
Scale Factor	The Scale Factor relates to gamma, and to the sensitivity. It multiplies the difference between foreground and background. Increasing the scale factor will make the algorithm more sensitive to slight changes between foreground and background. If objects are not being tracked, try increasing the scale factor. Decreasing the scale factor will make the algorithm less sensitive to slight changes
	between foreground and background. If parts of the background are being tracked, try decreasing the scale factor. Default scale factor is 5. The range is 1-20.
Dwell time	Dwell time is the time period that it takes for the algorithm to trigger an alarm, after a still object is either placed in, or removed from, an image.
	This time is important, as it will rule out objects that are momentarily placed, as well as momentary compression issues, and bugs on the screen etc.
Obscure period	In busier environments, such as train stations, a Still Object will constantly be covered and uncovered by people passing by. This setting allows setting the time period that an object is 'remembered' after something has obscured it.
	It is measured in frames, which are the individual images captured by the camera, and can go from 10-500 frames. This goes on the frame rate of the analytics channel, which usually runs at about 6 frames per second.
	At 6 frames per second, 500 frames will take roughly 83 seconds to pass by.
	Obviously the busier the environment, the longer objects should be remembered. There is a balance however as a busy environment will have many objects constantly being left and then taken away. Therefore, set a good balance between this setting and the object dwell time setting.



3.9.1.1.2 Background based Settings

Settings	
Use mask	
Min object size	5 🌩 🗌
Max object size	60 🌲 📃
Aspect ratio	80 ≑ 🚽
Build up background for [sec]	60 ≑ 🗌 😨
Persistence [sec]	60 🚔 –
Sensitivity	5 🛊 🔂 🔞
Display triggered objects for [sec]	600 🛊 🗌 🔞
Use colour	

Check Use mask to apply an algorithm **mask** to the area.

<u>Note</u>: Adjust area of mask by clicking on it and dragging nodes.

Set the **Min object size** to be monitored.

Set the **Max object size** to be monitored.

Adjust the aspect ratio.

Select the number of seconds **to Build up background model** for.

Set the number of seconds the **trigger must Persis**t in order to trigger.

Set the **Sensitivity** of the algorithm.

Note: The lower the sensitivity, the easier the objects will be picked up.

Set the number of seconds that the triggered objects will be displayed for.

Check Use colour to use colour for triggered objects.

3.9.2 <u>Zones</u>

Painting zones follows the same procedure described in <u>Basic/Smart VMD</u>.

3.10 Counting Analytics

Counting analytics allow for object counting using the Line Counter algorithm, and head counting using the Top down Head tracker algorithm.

For a guide to configuring and calibrating the 3D counter analytics, please consult the CathexisVision 3D Headcounter Appnote.

3.10.1 Line Counter

This algorithm only offers object counting; to trigger events when objects cross a line, use Basic, Intermediate, or Advanced analytics. For reports on object counting, contact support@cat.co.za.

For a guide to configuring the Line Counter algorithm, please consult the <u>Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced</u> <u>Analytics</u> section as the calibrations are identical.



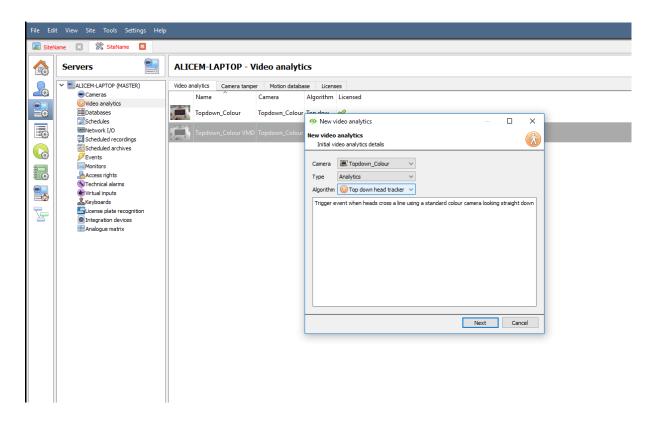
3.10.2 <u>Top Down Head Tracker</u>

Top Down Head Tracker Analytics

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Video Analytics \rightarrow New \rightarrow Motion Detection type \rightarrow Top Down Head Tracker.

The Top Down Head Tracker is designed to trigger when there is line crossing in an area. It offers event triggering when heads cross a line. It is used by a standard colour camera that is looking straight down.

To use the top down head tracker, visit **New Video Analytics**, select a camera, choose **Analytics** as the type, and **Top Down Head Tracker** as the Algorithm. Click **next**.



Note: The Top Down Head Tracker is an Analytics III license feature.

3.10.2.1 Configuring Top Down Head Tracker Analytics

3.10.2.1.1 Settings Panel

In the left panel of the configuring video analytics window, select Settings. This will bring up the following options.

Mask \rightarrow Mask can be checked to capture the area of the image where the algorithm works.

Min head size \rightarrow Any moving object smaller than the min head size will be filtered out by the algorithm.



Max Person size \rightarrow Moving objects larger than "Max person size" will be split into a smaller object.

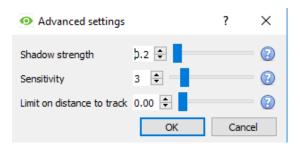
Aspect ratio \rightarrow Change this setting in order to better fit the "Min head size" and "Max Person size" overlays to the moving objects.

Default Counting Overlay → Click Default counting overlay to allow the visual display of tracking on the live and recorded data. This is useful to identify whether a head crossed a line, and how many times this occurred. These counts are also overlaid on the recorded footage. This setup allows resetting the head counter on an hourly or daily basis.

Onfigure overlage	ay ?	×	Check box to Use default settings.
Use default setting	gs		Choose the Style of the count overlay.
Style F	Rounded box	\sim	
Text			Set Text to appear before the count number.
Text size	Medium	\sim	
Text color			Select Text size and colour.
Background color			Select Background colour of the overlay.
Background opacity	50%	\sim	
Reset counters	Never	\sim	Set the Opacity of the background colour.
	OK Cance	I	Decide when to Reset counters .

3.10.2.1.2 Advanced

In the advanced tab, use the help button for an explanation of available options.



Shadow Strength

Shadows will be multiplied by this value, making them weaker or stronger.

Sensitivity

The lower the sensitivity the easier objects are detected.

Limit on distance to track

Maximum distance to track between heads. When '0' algorithm determines max distance.



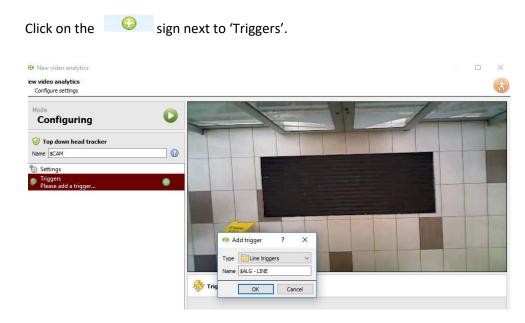
3.10.2.2 Triggers Panel

Having configured the algorithm – an initial attempt has been made at the correct configuration of the system. Now the triggers need to be configured. These are rules that use the algorithm and result in decisions being made (for example someone is tracked). This section covers configuring these triggers or rules. Once this is complete, the configuration can be tested.

Triggers can be found in the configuration panel of the "new video analytics" window.

3.10.2.2.1 Add a Counting Line

Add a counting line that people need to cross in order to be tracked.



Click Ok.

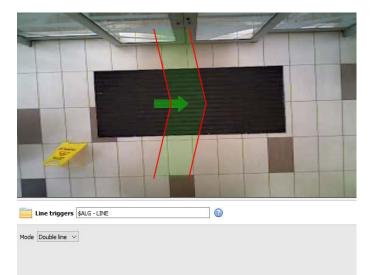


3.10.2.2.2 1.1.1.1 Choose Line Mode

Next, choose single line



or double line.



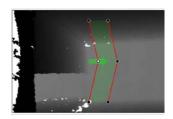
If a single line has been configured, the person needs to cross one line in order to be tracked. If a double line has been configured, then the person needs to cross both lines in order to be tracked. In this case, if the person dwells on the one line, and then crosses back across the same line, that person will not be counted.

<u>**Tip</u>**: Add a double line to eliminate false counts which may occur when a person remains within a confined space around a line.</u>



3.10.2.2.3 Define the Tracking Line

<u>Note</u>: This section will detail the definition of a **Double line**. The same principles apply to a **Single line**.



Add nodes Ctrl-click the red line.

Remove nodes Double-click on the node to be removed.

Move the Line Click anywhere on the red line to drag the counting line around.

Angle the Line

Click on a node and drag it to the desired position.

3.10.2.2.4 Add a Trigger

Click on the sign next to the camera name to add a trigger. Click .

Adding a trigger to the line will enable the setup of CathexisVision events, which will trigger when the line is crossed. If a trigger is configured, then this trigger will be made available in the event configuration as a valid trigger. This trigger may be used to generate recordings, switch cameras to displays or alarm to a central monitoring station.

Click and select Line trigger.

Note: Multiple triggers may be added to a line.

3.10.2.2.5 Define Direction of Trigger

Once added, define which directions will trigger a count. **The default direction is set to Either.** Select the trigger in the left panel, and options will appear underneath the camera image.



... . .

Note:

_...

A CNRP-1001 license is required for each direction being counted. Two CNRP-1001 licenses are required if using the default direction setting of either.

Click the blue hyperlink for options:

Either will trigger events if people cross in	either direction.			
Jine crossing \$ALG - trigger	8	Hold trigger for 10	000 ms	*
Trigger if line is crossed in <i>either</i> direction				

Forward will trigger events if people cross the line in the same direction of the arrow.

Jine crossing \$ALG - trigger	\bigcirc
Trigger if line is crossed in <u>a forward</u> direction	

Reverse will trigger events if people cross the line in the opposite direction of the arrow.

Stine crossing \$ALG - trigger	0
Trigger if line is crossed in <u>a reverse</u> direction	

Set the **Hold trigger** time to extend the event by this amount after the trigger has terminated.

Note: If multiple triggers have been added, define the trigger directions for each trigger.

3.10.2.3 Testing the Configuration

Once the initial configuration has been done, the performance of the head tracking system should be evaluated. This is achieved using the algorithm test mode. Press the 🕑 button to enter the test mode.

Check the overlay tick boxes to enable the overlays. These overlays provide debug information that enable the algorithm to be tuned, by altering the settings discussed in the above Settings Panel section.

These overlays are also available in the live video feed and on the recorded video in the Cathexis Vision system. The recorded video may be used to evaluate the performance of the system. The user may turn some (or all) of these overlays on when required. 005-20200528-250



For further information on the Head Tracker, email support@cat.co.za.

3.11 Motion Database (tab)

Motion database storage needs to be enabled for cameras which require motion data analytics. Motion data analytics (analytics which use data stored in this motion database) include:

- Heatmaps.
- Activity Trails.
- Motion Area Search.

Cameras on which these features are going to be enabled must then be added as motion database cameras. To add motion database cameras and configure the motion database, follow the instructions below.

Note: For information regarding the operation of motion data analytics, please consult the Operator's Manual.

Video a	nalytics	Camera tamper Motion database Lice	nses			New	Add a new motion
	Camera	Grid	Algorithm	Sensitivity	1		database camera.
- CILL	Driveway	Automatic aspect ratio, coarse granularity	Standard	Medium			
						Edit	Edit an existing motion
							database camera.
						Delete	Delete a motion database
						Delete	camera.
							cumera.
							Configure size and nath of
						Settings	Configure size and path of
							the Motion Database. See
							below.
New		Edit Delete Settings			1 item	Note: Only one n	notion database may be
							notion database may be
						configured.	



3.11.1 New Motion Database Cameras

Click New or right-click and select New to open the motion search camera window, to select which cameras motion data will be retrieved from. There are two tabs in this window; the Cameras Tab and the Settings tab.

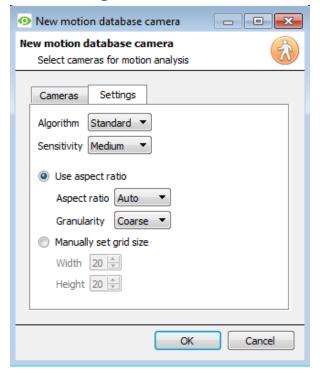
3.11.1.1 Cameras Tab

• New motion database camera
New motion database camera Select cameras for motion analysis
Cameras Settings
Cameras Canon 81 Dahua (disabled) Dahua 108 Dahua 156 HikANPR (disabled) Sam1 (disabled) Sam3 (disabled) Sam3 (disabled) Sam4 (disabled) Uniview
OK Cancel

Select the cameras that motion search will be enabled on.

Note: Check Cameras before checking the desired cameras.

3.11.1.2 Settings Tab



Select the **Algorithm** type. Currently the only option is Standard.

Select the **Sensitivity**. The higher the sensitivity, the more finely motion is tracked.

Use either the automatic grid size settings by selecting **Use aspect ratio**, or **Manually set grid size**.

If choosing Use aspect ratio;

Select the Aspect ratio.

Select the **Granularity** of the overlay grid. See below for an explanation on Granularity.

To manually set grid size, select the **Width** and **Height** of the grid.

Click **OK** when done.

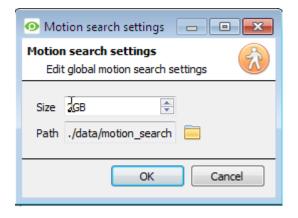


3.11.1.2.1 Granularity

The algorithm works by dividing the scene up into cells. The finer the granularity the smaller the cells, which means that motion can be detected in smaller areas of the image. The default settings are perfect for most camera configurations, the only reason to change this would be in the case of a high-resolution camera with a broad field of view, where the motion search results are not fine grained enough. There is a non-trivial cost in terms of processing and disk requirements associated with changing this.

3.11.2 Motion Database Settings

To configure the size and path of the Motion Database, click the Settings button.



Motion Data is saved in its own database.

Set the **size** of the database.

Click to set the **path** of the database.

Note: The motion search database size was not being set, changes to the motion search database size will now take effect.

3.12 Licenses (tab)

Video analytics Camera tamper Motion search Licenses

Camera	Analytics I	Analytics II
Waiting Room		

All analytics, other than Basic and Smart VMD, require licensing on a per-camera basis. Designate licenses to specific cameras in the Licenses tab, of the Video Analytics panel.



In the tab, there is a list of all cameras on this server, with a column for each Analytics type (from I to III). Spare Analytics licenses will be listed in parentheses next to the column header for that type. E.g. Analytics III has 2 spare licenses here: Analytics III (2). There will also be greyed **CathexisVision** license icons in that column.

Spar Queue 🦁



Note: Analytics III will contain the analytics for I and II. So, if a camera is licensed with Analytics III, it isn't necessary to add licenses for I and II, as they will already be included.



4 Databases 🗏

Databases are added on a Server-by-Server basis. As such, each server under **Configure Servers** will have a Databases section where that server's databases are managed.

Datab	Databases									
	Name	Туре	Size	Propertie	s Status	5				6
· ·										
Partit	ions									
Device	Moun	t poir	Size	Used	Free	External	Usage			
c:	C:		26.7 GB	16.6 GB	10.0 GB	No			62%	
d:	d:		26.7 GB	4.49 GB	22.2 GB	No			16%	
Alerts	;									
Ne	w	1	Edit	Delet	e M	anage stor	age	Impor	·t	

4.1 Add a Database

To create a new database, click on the **New** button in the **Databases** panel.

Note:

- 1. If Adding/Importing a database to an NVR from another unit, or via a Client, the **Browse** option won't exist. In this instance, the file path should be entered manually.
- 2. The Basic Database option has been removed from **CathexisVision** 2015, and onwards. As such, all databases created with **CathexisVision** onwards will be Advanced Databases.
- 3. **Important**: When using network storage with NFS/CIFS file sharing, the NVR requires **exclusive use of the file share**. This is because, for performance reasons, the database is initialised on network storage with sparse files. This means the disk space, which is configured to be used by a database is not pre-allocated. Any other device using space on the file share could result in a failure where the database runs out of disk space.



4.1.1 <u>General</u>

General	Advanced
Name	Extra
Total size	2.06 TB
Slices	
Path/Dev	vice
/disk_ma	ounts/fp2015031015194701/catdb/slice.54fe
/disk_ma	ounts/fp2015031015195902/catdb/slice.54fe
/disk_ma	ounts/fp2015031015213604/catdb/slice.54fe

Give the database a descriptive **name**.

An explanation of what slices are, and how to add them follows below.

4.1.2 <u>Advanced</u>

General	Advanced		
Max days r	ecording limit	No limit	•
Write policy	/	Maximise duration	•
Note: The '	'Max days req	ordina limit" settina det	ermines

the maximum number of days of recordings accessible in the database.

Leave this setting at "No limit" if there is no specific requirement to limit the availability of the recordings. The **Max days recording** setting will define how many days the database will record for, before overwriting the oldest recordings. With **no limit** set, it will simply wait until the database is full to begin overwriting old data.

Write policy provides the option of maximising the duration of the recording, or the performance speeds of the database.

With **maximise duration**, the database will pick the oldest video present when overwriting old data to add new data.

With **maximise performance**, the database will split the cameras across all the disk slices in a manner that ensures the most even load across the disks. To do this, sometimes the database has to delete data that may not be the oldest data for a particular camera.

4.1.3 Adding a Slice

The database is comprised of a number of slices, which are sections of hard drive partitions. To Add a Slice:

Click on \bigcirc New \longrightarrow Select the relevant partition \longrightarrow define the size of the slice \longrightarrow click OK.

Newly added slices will appear in the Slices section of the New Database window:

Slices					
Path/Device 🔺	Туре	Size	State		
c:	file	399 GB	New		
e:	file	594 GB	New		

Once slices are added, click on OK to create an Advanced Database.

🛃 Add slice	
Slice	
Add new slice	
Partition Size	c: ▼ 123.91GB
Partition info	
Total capacity	136 GB
Used	11.8 GB
Free space	124 GB



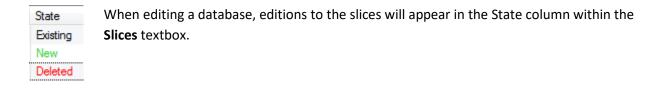
4.1.4 Important Recommendations

- 1. Ideally the database should be in its own partition, on its own Hard Drive.
- 2. If the database must share a drive with other information, then put it in its **own partition**.
- 3. It is recommended <u>to not</u> create a database in the Primary Windows Partition, however, if this is necessary:
 - a. <u>Do not</u> create it within the **CathexisVisionNVR** installation folder.
 - b. <u>Do not</u> make the database size unlimited. Leave between 50 and 100GB of disk space free when setting the size.

4.2 Edit an Existing Database

There are two ways to edit an existing database, either:

- 1. Select the database —> Click on the Edit button.
- 2. Double-click on the Database to edit.



4.3 Alerts

The alerts are specific to the currently selected database, and will show the **individual slice status**, if a slice in that database is not in a ready state.

For example, if the slice in a database is busy initialising, or if there is an error, you'll see an alert (with the slice ID) if that database is selected.



4.4 Manage Storage

Windows network shares can be managed by clicking on the Manage storage button.



Storage management		×
Storage management		
Windows shares		
Drive Network address User Status	6	
	🙆 Clo	se

To add or remove network shares,

use the 😳 🤤

Juttons.

Details of the network shares will appear in this area.

See below for adding a new network drive.

4.4.1 Add New Network Drive

🧿 Add new mapped netwo — 🔲 🗙	Sele
Add new mapped network drive 🚆	Ente
Drive F:	Ente
Network address \\	
User	
Password	
OK Cancel	

elect the **Drive**. nter the Network Address. nter the **User** and **Password** details.

Once added, the drive status should change to 'Pending' after about ten seconds. If this does not happen, check the drive settings by removing it and adding it again (there is no edit function).

4.5 Import a Database

Import an already existing database. To import a database, click on _______. There are two steps in importing a database:



4.5.1 Navigate to the Database Folder

🛃 Search
Search Search for a database to import
Database type Basic
Path E:/Database/ Browse
OK Cancel

There may be multiple databases stored in one folder, and a database isn't represented as a single file. For this reason, when importing a database, only navigate into the folder that contains the database to import.

Select the Database Type

Also, define whether or not a Basic, or an Advanced, database is being imported.

Note: If Importing a database to an NVR from another unit, or a Client, there will not be the **Browse** option. Know the file path and enter it in manually.

4.5.2 Select Database

CathexisVision will populate the database list, with all databases found in this folder. Select the database to add from the list of databases.

Select an existing database to import Iame Type Properties Last lock time Database Basic Path=E:/Database/ None	Import database	2			
Select an existing database to import Iame Type Properties Last lock time Database Basic Path=E:/Database/ None	nport database				
Database Basic Path=E:/Database/ None	Select an existing	g database to in	nport		
Database Basic Path=E:/Database/ None	Name 🔺	Туре	Properties	Last lock time	6
	Database	Basic	Path=E:/Database/	None	
	Database	Basic	Path=E:/Database/	None	



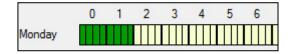
5 Schedules 🗐

All unit schedules for recording, and events, will be maintained under **Schedules** in the configure servers options.

5.1 Add/Edit a Schedule

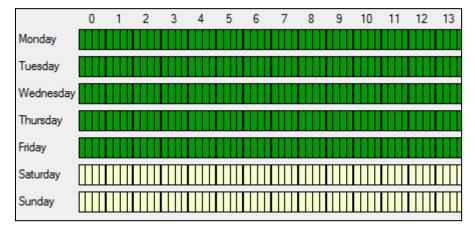
To add/edit a schedule, click on the relevant button and follow the instructions below. Give the schedule a descriptive name, and then define recording times (as shown below).

5.2 Set Schedule Recording Times



Left-click to select recording time – the green bars. Right-click to unselect recording time – the yellow bars.

To **select multiple cells,** hold the left mouse button down and drag it across the desired time-frame.



Recording week days only. To record only week days, set the schedule as seen on the left.

Cross-section selecting.

To select, or deselect, areas in more than one day at a time: hold the mouse button and drag it across the days.

Click OK, and the schedule has been created. This schedule may now be used for recording, and events on this unit.



6 Network I/O 📟

CathexisVision is capable of taking in relay inputs, and sending out relay outputs, via both analogue and digital channels. These relays may then be incorporated into the **CathexisVision** Events, and used as native triggers,

and actions in the **CathexisVision** software. Network I/O will be maintained under **WIIO** devices within the configure servers options.

/O Board	letwork I/O			
nputs				
Input 🔺	Name	Enabled		6
12	Input 12			
13	Input 13	×		
14	Input 14	X		
15	Input 15			1
16 Edit input	Input 16	×		
Edit input Dutputs	Input 16	Pulse duration	Pulse only	
Edit input Dutputs]		Pulse only	
Edit input Dutputs Output) Name	Pulse duration		Enabled 🏷
Edit input Dutputs Output 12	Name Output 12	Pulse duration indefinite	X	Enabled 🐑
Edit input Dutputs Output 12 13	Name Output 12 Output 13	Pulse duration indefinite indefinite	×	Enabled 🐑

6.1 Analogue

Relay connection on an analogue unit will be via the IO Board, on the back of the unit. This is connected to a PIAmod card that comes standard on all analogue units.

The IO panel allows for 16 inputs, and 16 outputs.



6.1.1 Edit Input/Output

IOs are edited by selecting an input/o	output and clicking Edit input, or	Edit output
🛃 Edit IO board 💷 💷 💌	🛃 Edit IO board output 16 💷 💷 💌	Enable
Edit IO board input 13 Edit input settings	Edit IO board output 16 Edit output settings	To enable an input, check th
	Enabled	box titled
Enabled	Name Output 16	Enabled.
Name Input 13	Pulse duration indefinite	
	Control Set/clear/pulse Set/clear/pulse	Name
OK Cancel	Pulse only	Give input a descriptive

the

name.

6.1.2 Output Specific

Pulse Duration

Set the duration of the output pulse, in milliseconds.

Control

Also set how the Relay is controlled. Give Set, Clear, and Pulse control; or set it to Pulse exclusively.

6.2 Network

Network Based IOs are handled by the EIO-1148, or EIO-3148, Network Base IO Expander.

This device enables comprehensive access, and control of remote in/output relays over an Ethernet network. Through the CathexisVision software control, opening and closing of integrated relay contacts can be incorporated into any response of a critical event.

6.2.1 <u>Settings Tab</u>

New Clicking on the Network I/O tab, within the I/O devices option, followed by selecting , gives the following options.

Settings	I/O	Name
_ `		Give
Туре	EIO 1148 •	IP Ad
Name	Network I/O	This i
IP address		

е device a descriptive name. dress s the IP address of the IO unit.

Note: if the IP address of the EIO unit being added is unknown, find the unit using the Cathexis Encoder Setup tool, which is installed with the CathexisVision software. Find it in the CathexisVision install folder, or under: Start→Cathexis→ CathexisVision Encoder Setup. On start-up this will bring up a full list of available devices.



6.2.2 <u>IO Tab</u>

Settings	I/O		
Inputs			
Enable	ed	Name	
1	Input 1		
2	Input 2		
3	Input 3		
4	Input 4		
5	Input 5		
6	Input 6		
7	Input 7		
8	Input 8		
Outputs	1		
Enable	d Name	Control	Pulse duration
1	Output 1	Set/clear/pulse	▼ 1000ms ≑
2	Output 2	Set/clear/pulse	▼ 1000ms ≑
3	Output 3	Set/clear/pulse	▼ 1000ms 🗘
4	Output 4	Set/clear/pulse	▼ 1000ms 🜩

General:

Give the input a descriptive name.

To enable an input, check the box in the column titled Enabled.

Output Specific:

Set the way the relay is controlled using the drop-down menu in the Control column. Set/clear/pulse
Set/clear/pulse
Pulse only

Pulse Duration:

Set the pulse duration of the relay, in milliseconds.

Note: make sure that these inputs have descriptive names.



7 Scheduled Recordings 🖾

Set cameras to record on a fixed schedule. This is done in scheduled recordings under **Configure Servers**.

7.1 Add/Edit a Scheduled Recording

Either:

- 1. Click on New or Edit Or:
- 2. Right-click
 - a. white-space and New (for a new Schedule),
 - b. on an existing schedule and select Properties (to edit this existing schedule).

This will bring up the Scheduled recording dialogue:

• Scheduled recording - Front Door	<u>Camera</u>	Select the camera to record.
Scheduled recording Edit scheduled recording settings	Enabled	To enable the schedule, check the box, to disable the
Database General Recording channel #1 - H264_CAT,2304x1296,30fps	<u>Database</u>	schedule, uncheck the box. The database to record to.
Frame-rate Full rate Schedule Always	<u>Recording</u> <u>Channel</u> <u>Frame Rate</u>	The video channel to record from the camera. The frame rate at which to
Only record when Always	<u>Schedule</u>	record. The particular schedule to
OK Cancel		assign to this Scheduled Recording.

Input Condition

Check the box to **only record when...** then select an input from the drop-down menu, and modify the condition requirement of that input by clicking on the blue hyperlink next to the menu.

This sets the scheduled recording to record based on the condition of an input. Inputs include existing schedules, virtual inputs, analytics algorithms, etc.

This condition will be indicated in the list of scheduled recordings in the 'Condition' column.

<u>Note</u>: Depending on the schedule selected for the recording, unless an input condition is enabled, the recording will be continuous.

<u>Note</u>: The schedules that are available are the schedules that are maintained on each server. Also create/edit these schedules here, using the options.



7.2 Right-click Menu

 New	
Disable	
Сору	
Set schedule	•
Set database	+
Set frame-rate	+
Set condition	+
Clear condition	
Delete	
Properties	

Right-clicking on an existing scheduled recording offers quick-adjustment options. These are the same options that are available when creating or editing a scheduled recording.

<u>Note</u>: To change the recording Channel, edit the schedule via **Right-Click** \rightarrow **Properties**; or by selecting the Schedule and clicking \square Edit \square .

7.3 Copy Paste

Copy/paste schedule settings either from one schedule to another, or from one schedule to a new camera.

7.3.1 <u>Copy Settings Between Schedules</u>

Right-click on an existing scheduled recording \rightarrow Copy \rightarrow right-click on another scheduled recording \rightarrow Paste.

7.3.2 <u>Copy Schedule Settings To A New Schedule</u>

Here, copy the schedule settings onto a new scheduled recording: Right-click existing scheduled recording \rightarrow Copy \rightarrow Right-click anywhere \rightarrow Paste New. This will bring up a list of cameras that are attached to this unit (e.g. Analog One).

Select any number of cameras to paste the schedule onto, and click OK.

8 Scheduled Archives 🔤

8.1 Archive Video Manually

For instructions on the process of archiving video manually, please consult the Operator's Manual.

8.2 Description

Archiving is a facility to enable copying and selecting recordings (from specific databases) to an archiving media, such as a Local disk, or an FTP server. Unlike normal recordings, archived recordings retain their authenticity, and can be verified as authentic (unaltered) on replay, making them suitable for use in courts of law.

The Scheduled Archive feature allows periodically archiving selected cameras, from selected databases, on a schedule. This is useful for a number of reasons. An important function is to create an archive of important cameras. As databases fill up, they start to write over the oldest recordings. To keep some camera's recordings for extended periods of time, it is important to archive them.

<u>Note</u>: When this is first enabled, it will start from the beginning of the database, subsequent archives will pick up from where it left off the previous time.

New scheduled archive	
Configure new scheduled archive General Advanced	
General General Name Schedule Every day Target Type FTP IP User Password Path	Source Database Aam Database Archive all cameras Archive selected cameras Cameras Cat Africa bottom(Zone 12) Cat Africa Consign (Zone 13) Cat Africa Consign (Zone 13) Cat Africa Storage (Zone 14) Cat Africa upstairs (Zone 16) Cat Tech Admin area (Zone 3) Cat Tech assembly 1 (Zone 5) Cat Tech assembly 2 (Zone 6) Cat Tech Meeting area (Zone 9) Cat Tech Sliding (Zone 788) Cat Tech upstairs (Zone 10) Outside Rear PTZ (Zone 8&15) Outside Rear PTZ (Zone 8&15)
	OK Cancel

8.3 New Scheduled Archive Window



8.3.1 General Tab

8.3.1.1 General Panel

General		
Name Schedule	Every day	v

General settings consist of assigning this archive a name, and a schedule.

<u>Note</u>: the schedules available are the same schedules set under Configure Servers —> Schedules.

8.3.1.2 Target Panel

Under Target, define where the archives are going to be recorded to. Select the relevant option from the **Type** drop-down menu.

Target (Target
Type Local drive 💌	Type FTP 💌
Path	IP User Password Path

Local Drive This will write to a selected path on the local hard drive, of the recording unit.

FTP This option allows for network archiving to any accessible FTP server. This is incredibly useful, as FTP servers may be accessed across LANs, and WANs.



8.3.1.3 Source

Source will define which cameras are to be archived, and which database to draw the cameras' recordings from.

Source
Database Alarm Database 💌
Archive all cameras Archive selected cameras
Cameras
🗹 Cat Africa bottom(Zone 12)
🗹 Cat Africa Consign (Zone 13)
🗹 Cat Africa Storage (Zone 14)
🗹 Cat Africa upstairs (Zone 16)
🗹 Cat Tech Admin area (Zone 3)
🗹 Cat Tech assembly 2 (Zone 6)
🗹 Cat Tech Meeting area (Zone 9
🗹 Cat Tech Sliding (Zone 7&8)
🗹 Cat Tech upstairs (Zone 10)
🦾 🗹 Outside Rear PTZ (Zone 8&15)

Database

There may be multiple databases for groups of cameras. Or send camera recordings from different triggers, to different databases (e.g. VMD input, Access Control, Alarm Panels).

The database drop-down menu will provide a list of all available databases.

Cameras

Check the Archive all Cameras option, or Archive Selected Cameras.

8.3.2 Advanced Tab

Output file format	Cathexis archive 🔹
Max file duration	10 min 🔻
Max file size	500MB
Path pattern	\$YEAR/\$MONTH_\$DAY/\$HOUR/\$CAMERA

Note: By default, these settings are set to maximum.

Output File Format. The only available format is the Cathexis archive format.

Max File Duration Is the maximum time length of an individual archive file.

Max File Size Is the maximum size on an individual archive file.

Path Pattern is the file naming convention used for the Archive files. There are written instructions in this window, in the GUI, detailing how to modify the Path Pattern.



9 Events 💋

One of the most powerful features of the **CathexisVision** suite is the flexibility of the events system. These events can take multiple inputs, and perform multiple actions based on them. A common example of such an event, would be triggering the recording of a camera stream, based on input from Video Motion Detection.

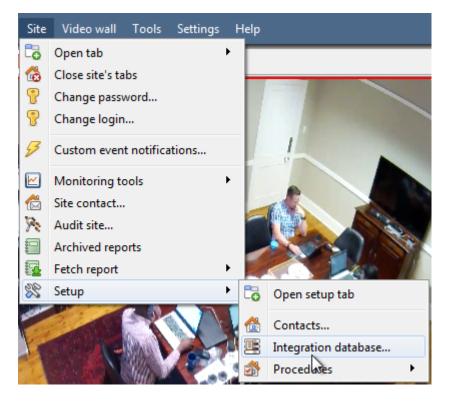
See below for information on creating the Cathexis Events metadatabase, before proceeding with creating CathexisVision system events.

9.1 Cathexis Events Metadatabase

A Cathexis Events metadatabase, once created by the user, will automatically store all site events generated by the CathexisVision system – even if there is no recording associated with the event. No other setup is required besides simply creating the metadatabase.

It might be useful to create this metadatabase before proceeding with creating the events.

9.1.1 Open Integration Database Window



Site Menu \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Integration database...

9.1.1.1 Initialise Integration Database

If integrations are not yet added to the system, this may be the first time initialising the integration database, also called the metadatabase.



• Integration database setup	?] (Click to Initialise Integration D)atabase.
WIN7VIRTUAL (MASTER)	Initialise integration database	Ι.	Then, select the size and part pase:	ition of the data-
			 Initialise integration database 	? 💌
			Partition Total space available	C:\(C:\) ▼ 2941 MB
	Connected to unit WIN7VIRTUAL		Disk space allocated to integration database	1000MB
	Close		0	K Cancel

9.1.2 <u>Create Cathexis Events Metadatabase</u>

Once the integration database has been initialised (if required), create the events metadatabase by right-clicking in the white space and selecting **New**.

💿 Create data	base	?	×
Database name			
Size	0 MB		* *
Driver	A5 POS (1.1.1)		•
	Arch POS (1.0.0) Axis AC (1.0.0)		^
	BACNet (1.1.1)		
3	BioAccess (1.1.1) Caddx Alarm Panel (1.1.1) Cathexis EIO3148 Counter (1.1.	1)	
	Cathexis Events (2.2.2)		
	Cathexis LPR (1.1.2) Commend intercom (1.1.1)		
	Cosmos Alarm Panel (1.1.1)		~

Give the metadatabase a **descriptive name**. A good name would be 'CathexisVision Events.'

Select the size of the database.

Select the Cathexis Events driver from the list.

Click **OK** when done.

That's it. No other setup is required in order to get the events database working. Should information on the operation of the metadatabase be required, then please consult the Operator's Manual.

9.2 CathexisVision System Events Window

Navigate to the events window via the Setup Tab. The path to follow is **Site** \rightarrow **Setup** \rightarrow **Configure Servers** \rightarrow **Events**.

9.2.1 Important Note

It is important to remember that Events depend on triggers that are predefined. This means that before getting to the events window, these inputs and outputs should be ready. An example [which will be discussed later] is

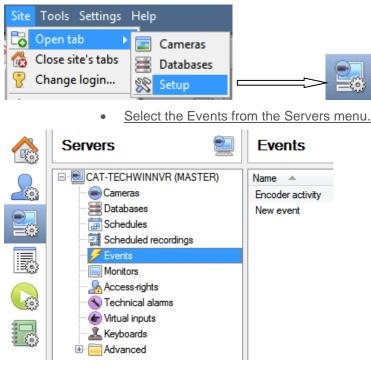


recording based on motion. In order to set up an event based on motion detection, a number of things are needed:

- 1. A camera that has been successfully added to the system [to provide the images].
- 2. A Video Motion Detection algorithm needs to have been set up [to trigger the event].
- 3. A database needs to be set up [as a point where the action of recording takes place].

It is easy to forget this, and head straight to the Events window to create an event, before there are all the resources to do so.

9.2.2 <u>Site \rightarrow Open Tab \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Configure Servers</u>



9.3 New Events Window Interface

9.3.1 Introduction

Events can be very complex things, with multiple triggers and actions; but they all have the same three core aspects.

General	Name, Schedule
Settings	
Trigger	Initiates the event
Actions	The action taken by CathexisVision (as a result of the trigger).

Below, the general events window interface is discussed, as well as the four individual sections to edit when creating an event (General Settings, Triggers, Actions, and Resources). These are visible as tabs in the above screen capture of the Events Window.



Disable

Delete

Properties

9.3.2 <u>General Interface.</u>

The Events panel will appear on the right. To add, edit, or remove Events in the list, use one of the

buttons at the bottom of the panel.

New Edit Delete bi <u>The Events Window</u> New... To enter the event

To enter the events window either click on **New** or **Edit**, as described above. Or use the right-click menu in the Events Panel. Clicking on white space will give the option to create a new Event. Right-clicking on an existing event will provide a drop-down menu, with the options shown in the image on the left.

🛃 New event	t de la companya de l	-	x
New Event New event	t		3
General	Triggers Actions Resources		
Name	New event		
Description	n 🔞		
Schedule	Always		
Priority	🖄 Low 💌		
Allow zo	zone isolation		
	ОК	Cancel	

The Events Addition Window.

9.4 General Settings Tab

General	Triggers	;	Actions	Resources			
Name	New e	vent	t				
Description	n					8	
Schedule		A	lways		•	<mark>※</mark> ``	2
Priority	۵L	w			-		
Allow	zone isola	ation	l				
Name		Thi	is is a des	criptive nan	ne gi	ven	o th



	This is the name the event is given when databased, or sent as an alarm. If this field is left empty, the Event Name is used. Clicking on the 😨 will provide a list of available description variables.
Description	 Note: The options available here will change, depending on the triggers chosen in the Triggers Tab, so set this parameter after triggers are set. The format for adding the variable is: Descriptive_Name: \$Variable_Name. Add multiple variables.
Schedule	This will define the times during which the Event will be active
Priority	This relates to the alarm that will be set under Call Base Station (this will be discussed below).
Allow Zone Isolation	Check this to give the operator the option to disable this event alarm for a short period. This is useful in cases where there are repeat false alarms. This doesn't disable the event. It prevents the alarm from popping up on the operator's workstation, or alarm queue.

9.5 Triggers Tab

Use <u>standard triggers</u> to trigger the event <u>Perform actions while</u> <u>any</u> of the following are true Description	10 New	is what initiates an event. There are three types of
	Edit Delete	triggers: 1. Standard triggers 2. Trigger templates 3. Integrated device
Only trigger event when select input V is high		triggers Choose between these options by clicking on the blue hyperlinked text.



9.5.1 <u>Standard Triggers</u>

Standard triggers come in the form of Video Motion Detection triggers, Relay I/Os, Schedules, and Virtual Inputs.

To add, or edit trigger click on New, or Edit.	Trigger While , is the drop-down menu from which the relevant triggers are selected.
Trigger New trigger Trigger while Gate Motor Status Hold time 15sec Schedule Every day OK Cancel	 is high is low the trigger, will give all the state options of this trigger. Click on it to access its options. Hold Time will extend the event for this duration after the trigger has terminated. (See table directly below, for a graphic representation). Schedule defines when this specific Trigger is active within this specific Event.
Hold Time	xxxxxx is the hold time. See how the little dip (where
VMD level: Event: xxxx	the trigger is inactive) in themiddle is filtered out by thehold time. Creating acontinuous event.

9.5.1.1 When and While

Standard Triggers can either trigger *when* or *while* a specific variable is true. *When* events are more complex, as it is necessary to specify when the event will end; *While* events are simpler because they automatically end when the trigger variable ends.

Perform Actions While	
<u>Perform actions while</u> is a simpler trigger setting. Where an action will be performed while certain triggers are active.	The user can set an absolute parameter, so the event will not trigger unless this parameter is true; even if all the other event triggers have
<u>Perform actions while</u> any of the following are true	been set off.
Description	Only trigger event when
axis VMD has motion (debounced for 15 seconds)	
Every day schedule is on (debounced for 15 seconds)	This also comes with multiple input options, which depends only on how many triggers have
Only trigger event when New user input is high	been set up.



Start Actions When	
	<u>Stop Actions After</u>
	Stop actions <u>after</u> 20sec 🔄 🔽 or when 🛞 Input 1 💌 go
	If Stop Actions After are selected, choose to stop
	an event after a certain amount of time.
	Also check the or When checkbox. This defines a
	further trigger that may stop the event before
	the timer has run down.
Under <u>Start actions when</u> a user can define multiple	<u>Stop Actions When</u>
conditions that must be met for an event to trigger.	If a timer is not desired, but the user still wants
	an input that will terminate the event then
This is useful if the user does not want an event to end	select Stop Actions When
when the initial trigger for that event changes state again.	Stop actions when select input 💌 goes high
<u>Start actions when</u> any of the following occur	On Retrigger
Description	If one of the event's triggers is set off, while an
Every day schedule starts	event is already occurring, there are three
	options.
Stop actions <u>after</u> 20sec 🐳 🕡 or when - select input - 💌 <u>goes high</u>	On re-trigger stop and restart active event
On re-trigger stop and restart active event	Only trigg stop and restart active event
Only trigger event when	start new event (duplicate)
	Actions ignore retrigger
	Only Trigger an Event When
	This defines an absolute parameter, without this
	trigger the event will not occur.
	☑ Only trigger event when

9.5.1.2 Any and All

Clicking on the blue hyperlink <u>any</u> of the following are true, allows the choice between **any** and **all**.

<u>Perform</u>	actions while	<u>all</u> of the following	are true
	Description	any	
		all	

This determines whether an event will be triggered if **any** of the selected constraints are triggered (i.e., only 1 is required to trigger the event), or if **all** the selected constraints are triggered (i.e., all constraints must be triggered in order to trigger the event).



9.5.1.3 Filter Period

Set a filter period to only trigger an event when inputs are set for a certain time. This means that triggers which last for a shorter period of time than the filter period has been set to, will be rejected. Filter period only applies when certain parameters are set, see the image below for these.

	0	New	event			×
		Event New eve	nt			233
		General	Triggers Actions Resources			
(- /		n <u>dard triggers</u> to trigger the event <u>actions while</u> <u>all</u> of the following are true			
			Description	6	New	
		¢	VI 1 is high (held active for 15 seconds)		Edit	
		۲	vi2 is high (held active for 15 seconds)		Delete	
		C	vi3 is high (held active for 15 seconds)		Delete	
	2)	Filter pe	riod Oms 💽 🕢		3 items	
	[On	ly trigger event when select input 🔻 is high			
				ОК	Canc	el



2

- Set the event to use **Standard triggers**.
- Set the event to Perform actions **while all** of the following are true.
- Use <u>standard triggers</u> to trigger the event <u>Perform actions</u> while <u>all</u> of the following are true

Filter period 0ms

- Set the filter period.
- Click the for a description of the filter period.



9.5.2 <u>Trigger Template</u>

Genera	I Triggers A	ctions	Resources			
Use <u>tr</u>	<i>iqqer template</i> to t	trigger the	e event			
Perform	<i>n actions while</i> the	e selecter	d input <u><i>is high</i></u>			
Availa	able				Selec	ted
	Cat Africa Consign	nment Sto	ck		$\overline{\mathbb{R}}$	Cat Tech Meeting area VMD
(A)	Cat Africa downsta				(A)	Cat Tech Meeting Area VMD
$\overline{\textcircled{\baselineskip}}$	Cat Africa Storage	e Area VN	ID		$\overline{}$	Cat Tech Sliding Door VMD
3	Cat Africa upstairs	WD WD		\$	$\overline{\mathfrak{R}}$	Cat Tech upstairs corridor VM
$\overline{\mathbb{R}}$	Cat Tech ? VMD				۲	Camera alarm
3	Cat Tech assembly	ly 2 VMD		¢		
$\overline{\mathfrak{R}}$	Cat Tech downsta	airs 1 VM	D			
۲	Core dump					
Ē	Every day					
Ē	Schedule 2					
Sched Hold tir		2	e 👔		▼ <u>is</u>	: high

A trigger template allows adding multiple triggers simultaneously to a single event. All **available** triggers will be displayed in the left-hand column, and all triggers that will be used in the event in the right-hand column. To

move triggers back and forth, select the desired triggers and click on the 中 icon that represents the direction to send the trigger.

<u>Note</u>: there are two important things to remember when using a trigger template:

- 1. This is useful in relation to the Record Trigger Cameras option (dealt with in the Actions section).
- 2. Set the database entry for this event to either take on the name of the event every time, or the name of the trigger.

9.5.3 Integrated Device Triggers

<u>Note</u>: This is general information on setting up an event with an integrated device. Each integration gets its own document, as these options change from integration to integration.

9.5.3.1 Select a Device

Stari standard triggers
trigger template
alarm panel

Integrated devices are also viable Event Triggers. This means that any integrated device may be used to trigger a **CathexisVision** Event.

Select a specific integrated device. In the image to the left, there is an alarm panel, which can be used to trigger an event.



9.5.3.2 Select a Device Parameter

any device event		
any partitionany zone		Clicking on ^{Trigger} integrated device
specific partitionspecific zone	+ +	may add a new tr
🖕 Communication channe	els	

licking on Trigger using <u>any device event</u> will provide a full list of the ntegrated device's own objects to use as trigger bases. Once, selected one nay add a new trigger, by clicking on New.

😿 New object property trigger
New object property trigger Configure settings
<u>State</u> equals Aam Schedule Every day Hold time 15sec € (?)
OK Cancel

Clicking new will give all the options that the Object provides as triggers.

For example:

If selecting <u>State equals</u> **Alarm**, and <u>any partition</u> above:

The event will trigger when any of the Caddx Zones alarm.

9.5.4 Triggering Events with Camera Tamper

If camera tamper detection is added to one/multiple cameras, one may want to create events which will be triggered by a camera tamper.

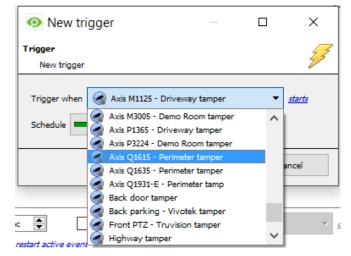
Note: Tamper detection must be added to cameras in order to trigger events using tamper.

9.5.4.1 Trigger Event from a single Camera Tamper

To trigger events using a tamper from a single camera, create a standard CathexisVision event which starts when

the tamper trigger starts, and stops 20 second after the tamper trigger stops. To do this, use and <u>Start actions when</u>, and then add at least one trigger to the event.





9.5.4.1.1 Set Camera Tamper to Trigger an Event

From the drop-down menu, **select the camera** that, if tampered with, will trigger an event.

Select the **schedule** during which the tamper will trigger an event.

<u>Hint</u>: It is useful to create a tamper schedule so that false tampers will not trigger an event; such as routine maintenance checks, etc.

Click OK.

9.5.4.1.2 Stop Event after 20 Seconds

Stop actions <u>after</u> 20sec	Once back in the New Event window, set the event to stop after 20 seconds.

9.5.4.1.3 Record Camera

To record any tamper events, in the Actions tab, select Record Camera.

O Camera record	ling			×	Select the tamper camera to
Camera recording Configure camera recor	ding				record.
Camera Advance Camera Database Recording channel Frame-rate Record for Pre-events	_	▼ ▼ ▼ ▼			Select the database to which tamper recordings will be archived. Hint: Create a specific database for tamper recordings if other triggered recordings are set up. Select the Recording Channel.
		ОК	Cane	cel	Select the frame-rate. Set the Record for the duration of the event.



Set the pre-event to 40 seconds in order to capture events leading up to the tamper.

9.5.4.2 Trigger Event from Multiple Camera Tampers

To trigger an event using camera tamper from multiple cameras, create an event using the following parameters:

Use <u>trigger template</u> to trigger the event <u>Start actions when</u> the selected input <u>goes high</u>

Then add a trigger.

9.5.4.2.1 Select Camera Tampers to Trigger Event

Use <u>trigger template</u> to trigger the event <u>Start actions when</u> the selected input <u>goes high</u>		From the list of available cameras, select all cameras that, when
Available Image: Book of the state of	Selected	tampered with, will trigger the event. Then click: Set the Schedule .
Axis Mini Dome VMD After Hours		Set the event to stop after 20 seconds.
Schedule Every day Stop actions <u>after</u> 20sec Image: Compare the select On re-trigger <u>stop and restart active event</u> Only trigger event when select input	rinput v <u>goes high</u>	

9.5.4.2.2 Record Trigger Camera

New Record camera	In the Action tab, click New and select Re trigger cameras to record the cameras, v were selected for the trigger template in
Record trigger cameras	1., above.
	Note: This option will only appear once the cameras have been added to the templat



Record trigger cameras Configure recording of	trigger cameras		In the Record trigger car opens, select the Databa
Recording Advar Database Recording channel	select database *		recordings will be archiv <u>Hint</u> : Create a specific da recordings if other trigge up.
GOP frame-rate	Full rate	8	Select the Recording Cha
JPEG frame-rate Pre-events	30.0 🔹 (0sec	3	Select the GOP frame-ra
	OK Cance	4	Select the JPEG frame-ra
	Cance		Set the pre-event to 40 s

meras window that ase to which tamper ed. atabase for tamper ered recordings are set

annel.

te.

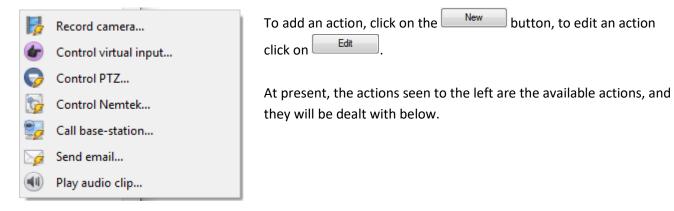
ate.

seconds in order to p to the tamper.

Note:

- 1. Keep the pre-event recording size small. For example, do not select 2MP JPEG images at 25fps.
- 2. Set a recording on the analytics channel to keep the database footprint to a minimum.

9.6 Actions Tab



9.6.1 <u>Record Camera</u>

Camera	Advan	ced	
Camera		Camera 01	•
Database Inside_DB		Inside_DB	•
Recording	channel	#1 - JPEG,0x0,30fps	•
Frame-rate	•	30.0	÷
Record for		the duration of the event	•
Pre-events		0sec 🗧	÷



Database database 💌	Select a preconfigured database on which to record the camera. One can select multiple databases to record the same event to, on multiple servers.
Camera 🔛 axis 💌	Select a preconfigured camera to record to the specified database. The drop-down menu will contain all cameras on the system.
Channel #1 - H264_CAT,1280x800,30fps 💌	If there is more than one video feed coming from the camera (perhaps one for recording and one for Video Analytics), then select the relevant feed for recording.
Frame-rate Full rate	Select the required frame rate for the video to be recorded at.
Pre-events Osec	Setting a pre-events timeframe will set the recording to start a few seconds before the event actually triggered. <u>Note</u> : It is necessary to have set up pre-events in the camera addition process, under the pre-events tab.
Camera Advanced Schedule Every day 🗨 🎽 🖉	The Advanced Tab , when setting up recording, offers the option to schedule when this recording setup should be active within this event. This schedule does not impact on anything beyond this specific setting.

9.6.2 <u>Record Trigger Cameras</u>

🛃 Record	trigger cam	neras 🗖 🗖 🗙
	igger came	ras of trigger cameras
Record	ing Advar	nced
Databa	ase	select database 💌
Record	ding channel	#1
GOP fr	ame-rate	Full rate 🗨 😨
JPEG f	rame-rate	30.0 🚔 🕢
Pre-ev	ents	0sec
		OK Cancel

If choosing integrated device or a trigger template, in the Triggers Tab (above), select the option to record **trigger cameras**. This means that the action will record any of the cameras associated with triggers in the triggers tab.

Database is the database the cameras will record to. **Recording Channel** is the default channel that will be recorded from the camera. Make sure that all selected trigger cameras have the same channel set for recording.

GOP Frame-rate is the frame rate to record GOP based video compression streams, such as MPEG4, or H.264. **JPEG frame-rate** is the frame rate to record single frame-based compression streams, such as MJPEG. **Pre-events** are the number of seconds of footage that are recorded from before the event was triggered.

<u>**Tip</u>**: by adding a second Record Database action, and assigning a second database, this event is effectively cloned to another database. This is useful, to clone an event to, say, a Network Attached Storage.</u>



9.6.3 <u>Control Virtual Input</u>

If virtual inputs have been configured, one may set an event action to control the input. This is useful as the triggering of one event can be used to trigger another.

9.6.3.1 Virtual Input tab

•	Control vi	irtual input			\times
Co	ntrol virtual inp				
H	Configure virtua	al input to control			
	Virtual input	Advanced			
	Virtual input	select virtual input ·	- •		
	Action	Set	•		
⊢					
			ОК	Canc	el
			ОК	Canc	el

9.6.3.2 Advanced Tab

Control virtual input
Configure virtual input to control
Virtual input Advanced Perform action at the start of the event Repeat action every 10sec Don't run action again until 10 seconds have passed Schedule Always
OK Cancel

Select the Virtual input to be controlled as the event action.

Note: Virtual inputs are configured in Setup Tab → Configure Servers → Virtual inputs.

Select which **Action** to control the virtual input with.

Inputs may be:

Set	-
Set	
Clear	
Toggle	
Pulse	

Select whether to **Perform action at the** beginning, or the end of the event. **Repeat Action Every** Check this box to define how often the action occurs during an event <u>Note</u>: This action is not available under **Perform action at the end of the event.**

Don't run action again... provides the ability to define how long the software must wait after the action has run, before repeating it.

Schedule creates a schedule under which this output will be controllable by this event.



9.6.4 Control PTZ

🛃 Control ptz	
Control ptz	
Configure ptz to control	9
Ptz Advanced	
Camera axis 💌	
Action Recall preset 💌 1 🚔	
0	KCancel

Camera is the camera whose PTZ the action will control.

Action

Recall preset will send the PTZ to a preconfigured

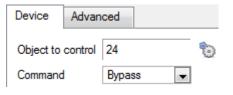
position.

Run pattern will cycle through a number of preconfigured positions, that have been grouped into a Pattern.

Advanced Tab

The advanced options are identical to those discussed under Control Output, below.

9.6.5 <u>Control Integrated Device</u>



9.6.6 <u>Control Output</u>

One may take an action on an integrated device's Objects in the action of an event. The options presented will differ based on the device being controlled (e.g. set an alarm, or open a door...).

For Advance tab information, see the Control Output, below.

😸 Control output Control output Configure output to control Output Advanced -- select output -- 💌 Output Action Pulse 💌 for default duration 🚔 OK Cancel

Output will provide a list of pre-configured outputs to control as part of this action.





Control output
Control output
Configure output to control
Output Advanced
Perform action at the start of the event 💌
Repeat action every 10sec
🔲 Don't run action again until 🛛 10sec 🔺 have passed
Schedule Every day 💌 🎽 🖉
1
OK Cancel

There is the option to **Perform action at the** beginning, or the end of the event.

Repeat action every

Check this box to define how often the action occurs during an event.

<u>Note</u>: This action, logically, is not available under Perform action at the end of the event.

Don't run action again... provides the ability to define how long the software must wait after the action has run, before repeating it.

Schedule creates a schedule under which this output will be controllable by this event.

9.6.7 Call a Base Station

This will define which Base Station is 'called' when an event triggers. It will send an alarm pop-up box like this:

Jarms		8 ×
1 0 0	S	
Site	Description	Time 🔺
Windy (CAT-TECHWI)	NNVR) enc activity	2012/10/03 14:57:24

To the base station chosen.

- The three colours Green, Yellow, and Red indicate the priority of the alarm. They relate to low, medium, and high respectively.
- The number within the coloured block indicates how many unattended alarms of that severity the base station has received.

9.6.7.1 Call Base Station Tab

Call base-station

Configure base-stations to call

Call base	-station	Alarm previ	ew	Adva	anced
First try	Windy		•	<mark>※</mark> ``	2
then try	New bas	estation	•	* ``	1
then try	select l	base-station -	•	* ``	1
then try	- select l	base-station -	•	* ``	1
Sen	d resource	information (camer	as an	d audio)

First Try: Select, from the drop-down menu, the primary base station an alarm should be sent to.

Then Try: If the connection to the first base station fails then the base station selected here will be the one that the alarm is sent to next.

Send resource information (cameras and audio): If the base station
has an alarm management gateway, this will send extra
information about the cameras and audio that were
involved in the event.



9.6.7.2 Alarm Preview Tab

Call base-station Configure base-stations to call	9
Call base-station Alarm preview Advanced	_
Enable alarm preview	
Cameras	
Camera 1 select camera 🔻	
Camera 2 select camera 🔻	
Camera 3 select camera 🔻	
Camera 4 select camera 🔻	
Use trigger cameras	
Settings	
Number of pre-event images 2	
Number of post-event images 3	
Include trigger info	
OK Cancel	

This applies to the Alarm Management Gateway. It will send information in the form of snapshots of the selected cameras along with the alarm.

Enable alarm preview enables the alarm preview.

Under **Cameras** choose predefined cameras to send with the alarm preview.

Under **Settings** define the number of pre-, and post-, event images to send along with the alarm.

Include trigger info will include trigger information if using a third-party system as an event trigger.

Advanced Tab

The advanced options are identical to those discussed under <u>Control Output</u>.



9.6.8 Send Email

The initial email setup must be done under Setup Tab → Configure Servers → General Site Setup → Email tab.

However, the options of recipient, and the information that will be sent in the email, are set here.

Send email Configure email to send	
Email Attachments Advanced To	G
Subject sevent_description Event name: sevent_name Event time: stime Server: server_name	Available variables • event_description • event_name • input_name • server_name • time
Copy	
	OK Cancel

Set the Recipient	Add an email address in the To field.		
	To add another recipient, click on the 🚨 icon, this will add another To field.		
Set the Variable	There is a list of Available Variables in the Send Email window. These define what information is sent in the email. To add variable, add the Variable name in the text box to the left of the Available Variables list.		
	The format for adding the variable is: Descriptive_Name: \$Variable_Name		
Copy/Paste	Copy/past variable settings from one Technical Alarm to another. This is very handy for doing a batch of Technical alarms, across multiple servers.		
Email Attachments Advanced Attach video from cameras recorded by the event	The Attachments tab allows the user to have video from the event attached to the email.		



d	The Advanced tab allows the user to define
event 🔻	when the email action takes place, once the
* ·	event has started.
seconds v have passed	A schedule for the event may also be set.
▼ * 2	
	event ▼

9.6.9 <u>Play Audio Clip</u>

9.6.9.1 Audio Clip Tab

Audio clip	Advanced	
Audio clip	select audio clip	•
Audio output	select audio output	•

Audio Clip is the actual audio file played as an action. The sounds are stored in the installation folder under <u>\sounds</u>.Audio Output is the audio device that will output the sound.

9.6.9.2 Advanced Tab

The advanced options are identical to those discussed under Control Output.

9.7 Resources Tab

There are two scenarios in which the resources set here will be sent:

1. Gateway

When a user responds to an alarm in a gateway the system will show the cameras and start the audio listed in the resources.

2. Camera Tab

When a camera tab is unlocked, and the event triggers, the display will switch to show the cameras listed in the resources.

Note: To view this information in the software, click on the



9.7.1.1.1 Resources Tab

Cameras	Audio input		а
select camera 🔻 🔻	select audio input	•	-
select camera 🔹 🔻			Т
	Audio output		v
select camera 🔻 🔻	select audio output	•	е
select camera 🔻 🔻			_
select camera 🔹 🔻			
			S
select camera 🔻			W
select camera 🔻 🔻			
select camera 🔻			С
Use trigger resources			re
			w

Send up to 8 cameras, an audio output, and an audio input.

This will be broadcast to all operators viewing this site, details on this are explained below.

Use trigger resources will automatically send resources that have been associated with the trigger.

Click for more information regarding when the resources set here will be sent.

9.7.1.1.2 Default Switch Display Settings



If deciding to send Resources, define whether or not the Operator's cameras tab should change when these resources arrive. These settings are made outside of the Setup Tab, under Settings Menu —> Switch display settings for new tabs...

Note: The settings here will apply to any new Cameras Tabs, opened after the settings are changed.



Lock Display

Will prevent the Cameras Tab from displaying any video feeds sent to it by the Event.

Restore display after

Will define how long after switching to the Event Cameras the Cameras Tab will return to the original display settings.

Don't restore display

Will leave the Cameras Tab on the Event Cameras until an operator, or administrator, resets the display.

Only Switch Local Cameras

Will only switch to Event cameras originating from a local site.

Note: Lock¹¹, or unlock¹¹, the currently opened Cameras Tab by clicking on the little lock located at the end of the Timeline on the Review Controls.



10 Monitors 🔳

The Monitors option provides the ability to send video from a server to a Video Wall. This is usually a selection of screens that are dedicated to showing video feeds.

10.1 General Settings

10.1.1 <u>Licensing</u>

Each monitor running on a Video Wall server needs to be licensed with a VGA license. The license is necessary <u>on the Server sending out video</u>, not on the Client. (Remember: "The license needs to be on the server the monitor is being added to".)

10.1.2 Video Wall Software

The CathexisVision Video Wall software is installed along with the CathexisVision Suite. It is called cat_vgaserver.exe, in the installation folder. In the Start Menu, under Cathexis, find it under the name CathexisVision Video Wall.

When running the Video Wall, software will show in the icon tray as the 🕮 icon.

10.1.3 <u>Run on Startup</u>

If this unit is going to be a permanent Video Wall it is advisable to have the software run on startup. To do so, add the exe to the Startup Folder:

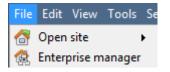
- C:\Users\User_Name\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\StartMenu\Programs\Startup . (Replace Username with the name of the user profile that the software will be running on).
- Navigate straight to the Startup folder of the currently logged in Windows User by copy-pasting the following into the Windows Explorer Navigation bar: <u>%appdata%\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Startup</u>.

10.2 Monitors Tab on a Base Station

The Monitors Tab will automatically be present in **CathexisVision** on the Server which monitors are added to. For the Monitors Tab to be on a Base Station, make the relevant site a Resources Site. This must be done in the Enterprise Manager of the Base Station the Monitors Tab is being added to.

10.2.1 <u>Create a Resources Site</u>

Note: this needs to be done on the Base Station the Monitors Tab is on.



Open the Enterprise Manager.

Site
Catcenturionsecurity
Matthew's Site

Select the site to edit. Here, the site edited is called Matthew's Site.



Edit	View	Tools	Settings
6	Add sit	e	
	Edit sit	e	
6	Delete	site	
Wo.	Add co	nnectio	on
0Ž	Fetch s	ite ID	
	Make r	esource	es site
	Clear re	esource	s site

Select Edit from the Menu Bar. With the site still selected click on **Edit—>Make Resources Site**.

To remove the Site's status as a resources site, follow the same procedure, but click on **Clear Resource Site**.

10.3 Adding a Monitor

10.3.1 <u>Monitor type</u>

There are two types of Monitor that may be added to the system. A VGA monitor and an XP switcher monitor. *10.3.1.1 VGA*

This will work via a VGA Server computer, with the CathexisVision Video Wall software running on it.

Monitor type VGA				
Name				
Address				
Port number	Default 🛓			
Monitor number	1			
Max live streams	Unlimited 🚔			

Address This is the address of the unit the video is being sent to (or the address of the router the information is being sent to, if the Video Wall is on another network).

Port Number. Leave this at default. Unless the video wall is on another network to the recording server, and it is necessary to forward specific ports.

Monitor Number corresponds to the physical monitory on the wall.

Max Live Streams will limit the quantity of live streams this monitor will support. (Set based on the monitor unit's streaming capacity.)

10.3.1.2XP



XP monitors, attached to the unit via a rear-panel cross-point switcher (This will be added to a Linux based system, most probably Fedora).

Monitor name is a descriptive name given to the monitor. Output Number is the number on the XP switch attached to the screen.

Note: This is available if the server unit has a VMX cross-point switcher, which is found on a Linux based server.

10.4 Access

Settings	Access			
Level	1 🔳 Ler	vel 2 📃	Level 3	Level 4

Under the Access Tab, define which user Access Levels have rights to make changes to this Monitor, via the Monitors Tab (discussed below).



11 Access Rights 🔏

Setup tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow expand Your_Server_Name \rightarrow Access Rights.

Under Access Rights, setup which Site Resources are available to specific access levels. Each user was assigned an access level when added. This user level corresponds to the Levels assigned to Site Resources here in Access Rights.

Besides resources in the Cameras tab, access rights will also be carried through to the Alarm Management Gateway, the Database, Archiving, etc. Access rights will apply to any area of the software that involves the site resources, which have had permissions set here.

<u>Note</u>: Users can be added and managed in Setup tab \rightarrow Configure Users \rightarrow .

11.1.1 <u>Tabs</u>

Select the resource from the list on the left, and check the level that will have access to this resource.

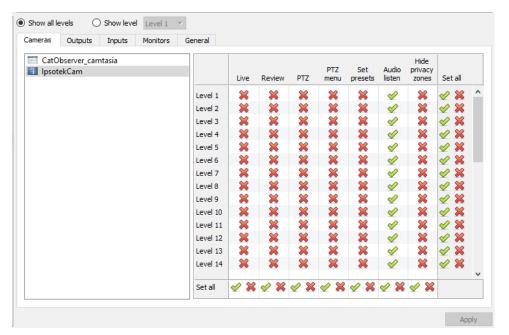
The tabs (**Cameras**, **Outputs**, **Monitors**, **General**) represent classes of resources whose access level may be controlled. The one selected will have all the resources that fall into this class displayed in the left-hand panel. In the examples below, the **Cameras** tab is selected and the settings refer to camera resources. However, the process is identical when editing **Outputs**, **Inputs**, **Monitors**, and **General**.

11.1.1.1 Cameras Tab 🚣

The cameras tab involves setting access rights for user levels for specific cameras. Select the relevant cameras on the left and then set the desired access right by clicking to toggle between \swarrow and \thickapprox .

There are two options when editing Access Rights:

- 1. Show all levels will show every Level setting according to each resource.
- 2. Show level shows only the settings for the selected user level according to each resource.



Selecting **Show all levels** and then selecting a resource (in this example **Camera 1**) will display the settings for all user levels according to the particular resource. I.e., the User level settings may be different for **Camera 2**.



ameras Outputs	Inputs	Monito	rs Ge	neral					
oupus	Inputs	THORNEO							
	Live	Review	PTZ	PTZ menu	Set presets	Audio listen	Hide privacy zones	Set all	
atObserver_camtasia	×	×	×	×	*	\checkmark	×	V 💥	
psotekCam	×	×	×	×	×	 V 	×	✓ ¥	

Show level is selected, and thus allows for the selection of a user level from a dropdown menu. Here, Level 1 is selected, and thus only the Level 1 settings for each resource are displayed. (Should there be additional resources, these would also be displayed here.)

11.1.1.1 Access Right Definitions

Live	This controls which Access Levels can view the camera's live feed. If this option is disabled, the user will not be able to view the camera at all, and all the following rights will be automatically denied.
Review	This controls which Access Levels can review recorded footage from this camera.
PTZ	This controls which Access Levels can control PTZ movement.
PTZ Menu	This controls which Access Levels have the ability to alter the PTZ menu.
Set Presets	This controls which Access Levels can change PTZ Preset positions.
Audio Listen	This controls which Access Levels can listen to the audio (provided the camera has an on- board mic).
Hide Privacy	This controls which Access Levels can remove the privacy zones added to the camera.
Zones	
Set All	Selecting < will give this level access to all settings; selecting X will give this level access to none.

Note: A *means* that this level has access; a *means* that this right has been denied to this level. Left-click on the tick/cross to change its designation.

11.1.1.1.2 Audio Listen Access Right

The table below details situations in which the Audio Listen access rights settings configured by the user do and do not apply.

Audio Listen access right settings <u>do apply</u> to:	Audio Listen access right settings do not apply to:
Live viewing.	Independent audio channels.
Reviewing from the camera tab.	Archived video.
Reviewing from the database tab (both video and	Connecting to a 2016.2 server using a 2015/2016.1
integration databases).	viewer.
Viewing video when handling an alarm in the Alarm	Connecting to a 2016.1 server using a 2016.2 viewer.
Management Gateway.	



11.1.1.2 Inputs, Outputs and Monitors

Select the relevant tab and enable rights for user levels to access selected inputs, outputs, or monitors configured on the server.

11.1.1.3 General Tab

Cameras Outputs Inputs Monitors	General
Configure users Control PTZ tours Export data Reset camera tamper	Level 1 Level 2 Level 3 Level 4 Level 5 Level 6 Level 7 Level 8 Level 9 Level 10 Level 11 Level 12 Level 13 Level 14 Level 15 Level 16 Level 17 Level 18 Level 19 Level 20 Level 21 Level 26 Level 27 Level 28 Level 29 Level 30 Level 30

In the General tab, assign user level access rights to general site abilities that are not specific to a camera. The table below explains the four access rights (shown in the image above).

Configure Users	 This gives non-admin users the ability to create and modify other non-admin users. Users with this ability will be able to: Enter the Setup tab to configure Users, however no other setup will be available or visible to that user. Create and modify other non-admin users. Change their own password. They will not be able to: Access any part of the system setup other than the user configuration section. Will not be able to delete themselves. Will not be able to create admin users. Will not be able to import LDAP users 	
Control PTZ Tours	Users with this ability will be able to control PTZ tours.	
Export Data	Users with this ability will be able to export data (e.g., archives, PDF and	
Reset Camera Tamper	CSV files from the database – provided they have database rights). If/when a camera tamper alert is presented on the system, users with this ability will be able to reset it.	



12 Technical Alarms 🔊

New technical alarm

Configure new technical alarm				
Name New technical alarm ✓ Repeat alarms at most once every 12 Call base-station select base-stations to call 10 Send email to configure email 10				
Alarm Settings				
New Delete				
OK Cancel				

This is a facility to set up alarm conditions in the event of a technical problem. A single **Technical Alarm** can send on multiple different alarms, in this way set up an alarm to send only information regarding hardware, or software, or cameras.

Technical Alarms are set on a server-by-server basis, and as such are located in the configure servers settings under Site \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Technical Alarms.

12.1 General Settings

Name New technical alarm				
✓ Repeat alarms at most once every 12 → hours ▼				
Call base-station	select base-stations to call			
Send email to	configure email	6		

Give Alarm a descriptive name.

The user mat set a global maximum amount of alarm repeats.

Select whether the alarms should be sent via email or go to a Base-Station.



12.1.1 Email Configuration

The initial email setup must be completed (see email configuration tab in the Servers configuration menu).

However, the options of recipient, and the information that will be sent in the email, are set here.

🛃 Send email	
Send email Configure email to send	Dø
To	3
Subject Salam_description	
Alam name: \$alam_name Alam time: \$time Server: \$server_name	Available variables • alam_description • alam_name • server_name • time
	OK Cancel

Set the	Add an email address in the To field.
Recipient	
	To add another recipient, click on the $rac{1}{26}$ icon, this will add another To field.
Set the Variable	There is a list of Available Variables in the Send Email window. These define what
	information is sent in the email. To add a variable, add the Variable name in the text box
	to the left of the Available Variables list. The format for adding the variable is:
	Descriptive_Name: \$Variable_Name.
Copy/Paste	The user may copy/paste variable settings from one Technical Alarm to another. This is
	very handy if dealing with a batch of Technical alarms, across multiple servers.



12.2 Add/Edit a Technical Alarm

To add a technical alarm, click on New dialogue:

, in the Technical Alarms panel. This will bring up the following

📴 New technical alarm					
New technical alarm Configure new technical alarm					
Name New technical alarm	rery 12 🔶 hours 💌				
Call base-station select base	se-stations to call -				
Send email to - configure email -					
Alarm	Alarm Settings				
Each Alarm added will appear in this list	If an alarm has configurable settings they will appear here				
New Delete					
OK Cancel					

Name

Give Technical alarm a descriptive name.

Repeat alarm at most...

This setting sets a 'global' repeat setting, which will define how often individual alarms may repeat.

Call Base Station

For alarms to be sent to a Base Station. Click on

🔯 to set the Base Station/s.

Base Station setup is dealt with under section Error! Reference source not found. Error! Reference source not found.

Send Email to

There is also the option to send an email in the event of an alarm. To setup a new email, click on

Email Setup is dealt with under section Error! Reference source not found. Error! Reference source not found.

12.2.1 Available Alarms

Clicking **New**, in the New Technical Alarm dialogue, will initiate a drop-down menu with the following possible options:

Base-Station	Trigger when a base-station is configured to send alarms via a capture station. The
Alarms	base-station can generate alarms such as software failures.
Camera Faults	Will trigger based on cameras being up for a certain percent of the time, or
(Configurable)	cameras failing a certain number of times in a given period (configurable).
	Configure:
	Here, set whether alarms trigger from one, or both options listed above. Also select to have alerts from all cameras, or from selected cameras.
Database	Triggers when the database encounters an error, such as failing to write data to the
	database.



Disk	Triggers when disk errors occur.
Environment	Triggers off environment warnings, such as high CPU temperature, fans running at low RPM. ³
Failover	The site master can be configured to generate a technical alarm if any of the failover servers are down.
Frame-Grabber	Triggers when a frame-grabber has a problem, such as frame-grabber reboot, card stalled.
Gateway alarm	Only applies to gateway systems, and triggers when the gateway experiences a problem, such as an error connecting to the alarm database.
Integration Database	Triggers when the integration database is down.
Metadatabase	Triggers when the metadatabase (typically used in integrations) encounters a problem, such as running out of disk space.
Network I/O	Will trigger when an <u>EIO</u> is down.
Network Connectivity	Triggers when target/s in a list of configured IP addresses does not reply when pinged.
Reboots	Triggers when a unit reboots frequently, or has a watchdog, or hard-reboots.
Recording failure	Triggers when a recording should be taking place, but for some reason isn't. Enabling this alarm will periodically check recordings for failure. Configure: All that needs to be set here is the cameras not desired to trigger this alarm.
Recording Period	Will trigger when a database stops recording before its predefined period is complete. E.g. if a database is set to record for 30 days, but it only records for 25.
Scheduled Archive	Triggers when a scheduled archive encounters a problem, such as the archive destination not being accessible.
Server Monitoring	This is a technical alarm that is generated when a unit on the site goes down.
Software Failure	Triggers when a software module fails.
Test	Triggers an alarm at a set frequency. This is intended to test the system, to see if it will receive alarms.

12.2.2 Important Note on Operating Systems

The technical alarms have different levels of integration with the different Operating Systems. The following is a table indicating the Operating Systems, and the technical alarms that are supported.

Technical Alarm Type	Windows	Fedora	Ubuntu
Base-stations Alarms	Х	Х	Х
Cameras	Х	Х	Х
Database	Х	Х	Х
Disk	Х	Х	Х



Environment ⁴			
Failover	Х	Х	Х
Frame Grabber		Х	Х
Gateway	Х	Х	Х
Meta-db	Х	Х	Х
Network I/O	Х	Х	Х
Network Connectivity	Х	Х	Х
Reboot	Х	Х	Х
Recording Failure	Х	Х	Х
Scheduled Archive	Х	Х	Х
Software Failure	Х	Х	Х

⁴ Environment alarm only available on supported Cathexis hardware.
005-20200528-250 28 May 2020



13 Virtual Inputs 🖲

Virtual Inputs are user-initiated triggers. They may be added to events, and used as manual triggers. This takes the place of a physical button (which is why the icon for Virtual Inputs is a finger).

For instance, a virtual input may be created, and added to an event that starts a camera recording. The Virtual Input would then function as a record button for that camera.

13.1 Add a Virtual Input

🛃 New user inp 💷 💷 💌	To add the Virtual Input, click New .
New user input Configure new user input	Give the input a descriptive name.
Enabled Name New user input	This Input works the same way as other triggers in an event, look to <u>9</u> Events \swarrow for more information.
OK Cancel	



14 Keyboards 🚣

When adding a Keyboard to a unit there are two possible situations: adding it to a **Recording Server**, via the **Site** Menu \rightarrow Open Tab \rightarrow Setup Tab; or to a Base/Viewing Station, via the CathexisVision Menu Bar.

14.1 Recording Server

New keyboard Configure new keyboard		
Keyboard	type KBD 3000 🔻	
Port	COMM 2 🔻	
Baud	9600 🔻	
Data bits	8 🔻	
Parity	None 🔻	
Stop bits	1 🔻	
	OK Cancel	

Adding a Keyboard to a Recording server is done on the server, and as such, access Site \rightarrow Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Keyboard.

Simply choose the Keyboard type and enter the port number that corresponds to the port that the keyboard is plugged into.

14.2 Base Station



🛃 Keyboard Setup 🖃 Enabled Cathexis KBD6000 Type -Port * 1 Baud 9600 Ŧ Data bits 8 Ŧ Parity None Ŧ ٠ Stop bits 1 Debug logging OK Cancel

If adding a Keyboard to a base-station, it is necessary to be on that specific base station.

Go to the menu bar and select **Settings—>Keyboard**.

Enable

Check the box titled Enabled to enable the added keyboard.

KBD3000

The only setting to change for the KDB3000 is the port number. (In fact, other changes will be ignored.)

KBD6000

The correct settings for the KBD6000 are as follows:

Baud	19200	Again, these should be the default settings, and
Data Bits	8	probably won't need to be changed.
Parity	None	
Stop Bits	1	

Note: this Keyboard Setup is only available in 2019.2 client software.



15 Integration Devices General Settings

One major benefit of the Integration Devices panel is that it centralises all integrations to a single interface in which the addition, edition, and management of all integrations added to a server/site is done.

As there are many different integrated devices, and each device will have different options, this General Setup section is designed to introduce the user to the Integration Panel, and the features that are common to all integrations. For more specific instructions and information on a particular integration, please consult the relevant integration guide and/or integration white which be found paper, can at https://integrations.cathexisvideo.com/manuals/. For help with a particular integration, please contact support@cat.co.za.

15.1 Integration Database

Each integration requires its own, dedicated database. This can be done from two places in the software, but the process is the same for both. The navigation options are explained below.

- 1. Site menu \rightarrow Setup \rightarrow Integration database....
- 2. Setup tab → Configure Servers → Integration Devices Panel → General tab → Configure integration database.

For both options above, follow the steps below.

15.1.1 <u>Initialise the Integration Database</u>

Integrated device databases are added to a broader, integration database. If it hasn't been already, the integration database needs to be initialised. If it has, proceed straight onto creating a new database (section 15.1.2).

😽 Integration dat	tabase setup
I Virtual 5043a	Initialise integration database
	Connected to unit Virtual 5043a
	🚫 Close

The first time an integration database is added, initialise this feature on the unit.

Select the unit to add the database to, from the list on the

left, and click Initialise integration database. Choose which partition the database will be formed on, and select how much space it will take up.

Partition	C:\(C:\)	-
Total space available	8134 MB	
Disk space allocated to integration database	1000MB	-

15.1.2 Add a New Devices Database

Right-click on the white space that was occupied by and click on New.

Initialise integration database before initialising the database,



🚡 Create database		?	×
Database name			
Size (Max: 8400 MB)	100 MB		
Driver	Paxton Access Control (1.2.1)		-
	Ok	Cano	cel

Give the database a descriptive **Database Name**.

Allocate a Size to the new device database.

Then choose the device **Driver** the device will be using.

15.1.3 Integration Database Procedures

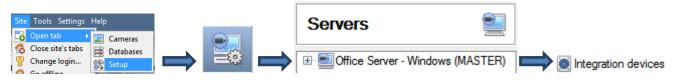
Once at least one database is added, the following procedures will be present. Right click on a database to view:

Fetch logs	Fetch Logs will fetch the logs for the unit right-clicked on.
Delete	Delete will delete the database selected.
Resize	Resize allows resizing this database. There will be Min and Max options, which will
Upgrade	either fill the database to the maximum, or the smallest, sizes allowed.
Info	Upgrade upgrades the metadatabase.
Modify	Info provides a full list of all available information on the database.
New	Modify will simply allow renaming the Database.
Fetch all logs	New will open the New Database Dialogue.
Disk info	Fetch All Logs will pull a consolidated log for all integrations databases on this unit.
	Disk Info will provide detailed information about the hard drive the database is on, as
	well as the Databases on it.

15.2 The Integration Devices Panel

15.2.1 <u>Open the Integration Setup Panel</u>

Setup Tab \rightarrow Configure Servers \rightarrow Integration Devices



This will bring up the Integration Devices Panel on the right. This is the central point at which integrations are managed.



WinNVR - Integration devices			
Devices			
Name 🔺	Driver	Ċ	New device
PnP Clothing Paarl Mall	PnP POS		Edit device
Woolworths	Woolworths POS		
			Delete device
			2 items

Configuration of 'PnP Clothing Paarl Mall'

Object configuration	Object pr	operties	Device events	Groups	General		
Object type [🗩 All d	bjects		r				
Туре		ID	Name	Camer	as	Groups	1
🖕 Communicati	on channel	default	t Default				
•							•
< New	Edit	Dek	ete				► 1 iter

15.2.2 Adding an Integrated Device

	蓤 gui_res	? X
Click New device, and	Select a driver	
select the drivers for		
the device added. New device Edit device Delete device	A5 POS CaddX alam panel Esoteric device Galaxy alam panel Moduteq 2W perimeter monitoring Moduteq C perimeter monitoring Paradox EV0192 PnP POS SAFLEC access control Simple POS demo SkyNet Aivex Aireco Aivex HT Script POS Demo < Back	E

Devices

Name 🔺	Driver
Galaxy Integration	Galaxy alarm panel
Integrated_Device	Aivex Aireco

Once the device is added, it will show up in the **Devices** panel. Left-click on a specific device to access its Configuration Settings.



15.2.3 <u>Configuration Tabs</u>

Initially, the configuration panel will be titled **Select device**. Once an integration is added, the title will become **Configuration of Device_Name**. This is the area where one views the device's objects, and changes settings. The Configuration section will be automatically populated with the information received from the device.

15.2.3.1 Object Configuration Tab

Object configura	tion	Object properties	Devi	ce events	Groups	General	
Object type 🚺	Zone		•				
ID 🔺	Nar	ne		Cameras			(
1	Re	Reception Door					
2	Re	ception					
3	Pu	rchasing & Logistics		Cat Tech /	Admin area	(Zone 3)	

Individual units attached to a specific device are called **objects**. For example, on a Point of Sale integration, individual tills are objects; or, in access control integrations, the individual access nodes are objects.

Objects can have cameras assigned to them, so that camera recordings can be linked to the till via a metadatabase.

Object type All objects Each integration will obviously offer different objects.

15.2.3.2 Object Properties Tab

Object properties are the specific information about each object. For instance, the different names that have been given to an access control node, its armed status etc.

15.2.3.3 Device Events Tab

This gives a live stream of all device events as they occur. For POS this would be sales, for Access Control this would be access events, and so on.

15.2.3.4 Groups Tab

Create groups of the same type of object. When creating a group, select the object type to include in the group, once the group is created the available objects panel will fill up with all available objects of that type. From this list, choose which objects to use in the Group.

This is incredibly useful in setting up Events an entire group can be used as an Event Trigger.

15.2.3.5 General Tab

Offers general information, such as the metadatabase that the integration is attached to. Also, access the Integration Database dialogue from here, by clicking on Econfigure integration databases

15.3 Important Considerations

There are some things that need to be taken into consideration when adding an integrated device.

15.3.1 Device Triggered Recordings; or Continuous Recording with Device Provided Markers

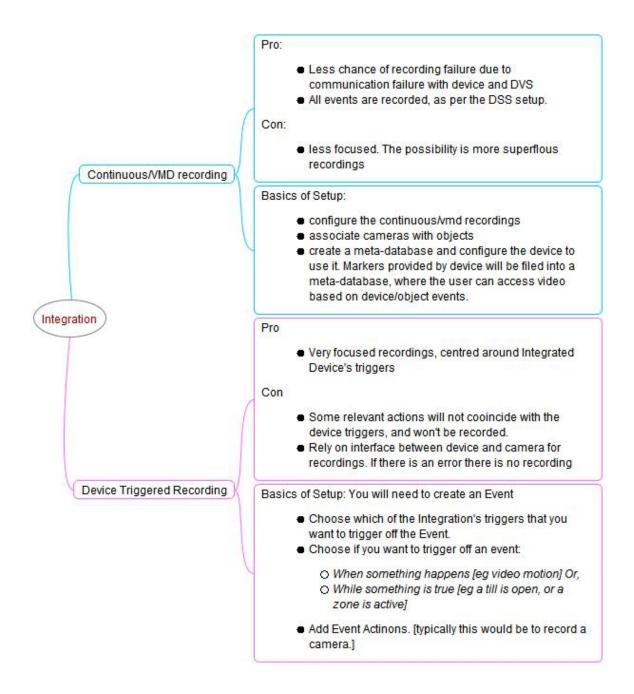
One of the first things to take into consideration when using an integrated device is how it should interact with the Surveillance System.

• Should the device set itself to trigger recordings? Or,

Should there be continuous recording, with the integration creating time markers on this recording?
 005-20200528-250
 28 May 2020
 Page 172



There are pros and cons to both. These, along with basic setup designs are provided in the mind-map below:





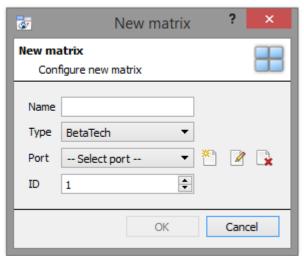
16 Analogue Matrix 🖽

CathexisVision has the ability to support an analogue matrix. Click on Analogue matrix to access the setup. This feature allows for a true hybrid solution between IP and analogue based security installations.

Note: An Analogue matrix would be used on existing analogue based sites. So there would be an old analogue matrix controlling or switching analogue camera video feeds onto analogue monitors. The ability to control older matices is useful to switch a specific camera to a monitor based on a **CathexisVision** event action.

16.1 Add/Edit an Analogue Matrix

16.1.1 <u>New Matrix Dialogue</u>



After clicking on NEW, the dialogue box will appear.

Give the matrix a descriptive **name**.

Select the type of matrix that will be used.

Select/Configure a **port** (dealt with below).

Set the **ID** of the matrix.

16.1.1.1 Port Editing Dialogue

🚡 New por	t 🗆 🗆 🗙
New port Set the r	new port's configuration 家
Port type	Serial 💌
Port CON	1M 1 💌
Baud rate	9600 💌
Data bits	8 💌
Parity	None 💌
Stop bits	1 💌
	OK Cancel

To add/edit a port, this menu will be visible. To add a new port, click on the $\overset{\text{lic}}{=}$ icon, to edit one, click on the $\overset{\text{lic}}{=}$ icon, and to delete the currently chosen one, click on the $\overset{\text{lic}}{=}$ icon.

Select the **port type** that will be used.

The **port** option relates to the physical port on the unit.

Select the relevant **Baud Rate**, **Data Bits**, **Parity**, **and Stop Bits** for the specific matrix that will be used.



Setup Tab: Resources

1	Res	ource Panel Configuration	76
1.	1	Resource Panel Setup	76



1 **Resource Panel Configuration**

The Resources Panel is the panel on the right-hand side of the Cameras Panel, in the Cameras Tab. It is a customisable panel of resources, which gives the user quick access to the resources that are open to them. To configure location of Resource Panel in the Cameras Tab, see CathexisVision GUI Setup section.

The Resources Panel Setup is the means to configure the resources that users will see in the Resources Panel.

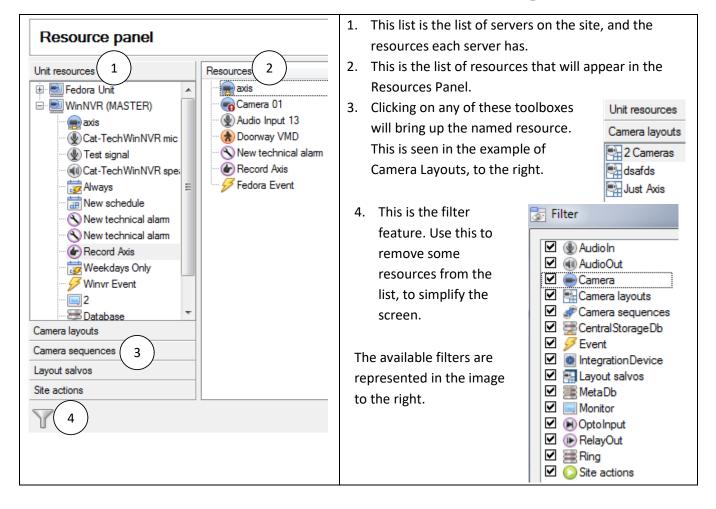
The Resources Panel should present all of a site's resources in a manner that is suitable for operators on the site. For example: List all cameras for the 1st floor of a building under a folder called "1stFloor cameras", or list all doorway cameras under their own folder, or create a folder per operator, and list resources relevant per operator.

TIPS:

• Ensure all of the resources are set up as required by the complete spectrum of users, because for most users this is the only point of access to the resources.

• **Resources can be repeated in different folders**, so, for example, folders can be defined by user names, and certain resources repeated across all of these user folders.

• Remove unused resources from the tab to reduce interface clutter.



1.1 Resource Panel Setup



1.1.1 Add a Resource to the Resources List

To add a resource to the list that will appear on the panel, simply select one or more resources, by left-clicking on them, then click-drag them horizontally into the Resources area.

1.1.2 <u>Create a folder</u>

Organise resources further by creating a folder. To do so, right-click on any white-space in the resources area (Where the included resources are), and click on New Folder. Give the folder a name.

Folder properties				
Folder name Example Folder				
ок	Cancel			



To add items to the folder, simply drag-click them into the folder, in the same way resources were added to the list.

New folder

1.1.3 <u>Delete/Rename folders and Resources</u>

To remove items from the Resources Panel list, right-click on the item and click **Delete.** To Rename a folder, right-click on the folder, and click **Properties**.



Setup Tab: Site Actions

1	Site	Actions	179
	1.1	Creating a Site Action	179
	1.2	Site Action Types	180
	1.3	Adding a Site Action to an Event	180
	1.4	Adding a Schedule to a Site Action	180



1 Site Actions

Site actions are setup in the **Site Actions** section in the Setup Window. From Configure Servers, click on the following icon to get there:

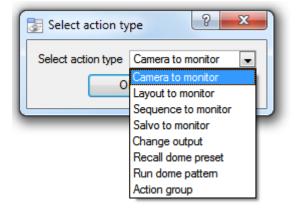


created.

The reason for having site actions outside of the Events Setup Window in Configure Servers, is because of the fact that Events are edited on a server by server basis. [A good way to think of Site Actions is as **Universal Actions**.] Therefore, the reason for creating a site action is to create one action that can be applied to multiple events, across multiple servers.

1.1 Creating a Site Action

To add a new action simply right-click on any white space in the Actions Panel, and select <u>New action</u>. The drop-down menu will contain a list of all possible site actions. Select the relevant action and set it up. The menu will change depending on the action





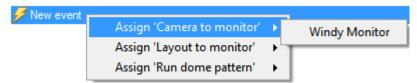
1.2 Site Action Types

Camera To Monitor	This will send a preconfigured camera to a CathexisVision Video Wall.
Layout to Monitor	This will set the view on a Video Wall to a predefined Layout.
Sequence to Monitor	This will run a predefined Sequence of individual cameras in the Monitor.
Salvo to Monitor	Will run a predefined Salvo of Layouts on a Video Wall.
Change Output	Changes an Output state.
Recall Dome Preset	Sends a PTZ camera to a Preset position.
Run Dome Pattern	Cycles a PTZ through a pattern (a sequence of Preset positions).
Action Group	An action group is a group of site actions.

<u>Note</u>: As with the other events, the resources used by the relevant Site Actions need to have been created an be available for use before an action can be created. For instance, the **Camera to Monitor** Site Action uses a monitor that was created under Monitors in Configure Servers.]

1.3 Adding a Site Action to an Event

For a site action to trigger when an Event triggers, attaching a Site Action to an existing Event is very simple. In the Events tab in the right-hand panel, right-click on one of the events. This provides a list of Action Types that have been added. Under each type is a list of all Actions of that type created.



Finally, select the Action to assign to this event.

1.4 Adding a Schedule to a Site Action

Events	Schedules		
Description	ı	Action	When
🔂 Massive Universal Global Sche 🜔 Windy Monitor daily at 00:00			

If no schedules are created, right-click any white space under the schedules tab, and select will bring up the **Edit Schedule** window, as seen below.

New schedule . This

🛃 Edit schedule			? X
Name Schedule Daily 💌 at 00 hr	00 min	on every (day of week 💌
		ОК	Cancel

To add the schedule, select the exact times when the Site Action will be triggered.

[i.e. It is not an active during schedule, it is a trigger when schedule.]

Use the drop-down menus to further specify times.

<u>Note</u>: The schedules created here only apply to Site Actions, and cannot be applied elsewhere.



Setup Tab: Reports

1	Rep	orts	182
	1.1	Controls	182
	1.2	Create Report	183
	1.3	Cameras Report	184
	1.4	Database Usage Report	185
	1.5	Disks Report	186
	1.6	Environment Report	188
	1.7	Events Report	189
	1.8	File System Report	190
	1.9	Hardware Report	190
	1.10	License Features Report	191
	1.11	Licenses Report	192
	1.12	Reboots Report	194
	1.13	Recording Times Report	195
	1.14	Software Report	196
	1.15	System Report	197
	1.16	System Setup Report	198
	1.17	Unit Up-Time Report	199
	1.18	User Defined Report	200
	1.19	VMX Counters Report	201
	1.20	VMX Temperature Report	202
	1.21	Windows Unit Report	202



1 Reports

CathexisVision offers extensive reporting on both the Hardware, and Software, that comprise the Site. A very practical feature of Reports is the ability to create **Report Templates**. These are pre-defined sets of reports that will pull the same information each time. One of the real benefits of the Templates is the ability to retrieve the reports on a schedule.

Reports can be found under Site Menu→Open Tab→Setup→

Note: If scheduled metadatabase reports are required, these must be configured individually within the particular metadatabase. Extended filtering has been added to scheduled metadatabase reporting. Consult the Operator's Manual for more information.

1.1 Controls



1.1.1 Add, Edit or Delete

To Create a Report, or edit a new one, click on either New or Edit. See the Report Window section, below.

1.1.2 Schedule

Site report schedule	8 X
No schedule	
Schedule	
Enable	
Format HTML	
Schedule	
Hourly at 00 min	
Actions	
E-mail report	
Recipient 1 No contact	
Recipient 2 No contact	
Recipient 3 No contact	
Recipient 4 No contact	
	OK Cancel

To add a Schedule to a report: Select a report from

Schedule

the Reports list, and click on the button.

Format. Emailed reports are sent in HTML format.

Schedule. The actual schedule may be generated of a variety of time frames, from hourly to monthly.

Actions

four options.

If email is set up on the site, and some Site Contacts are set up, then one may email the reports when they are generated.

At the bottom of the fetch window, there are

1.1.3 <u>Fetch</u>

This will pull the report for the Template Chosen.

Print Export E-mail	1	Archive
---------------------	---	---------

- 1. Print the report.
- 2. **Export** the report as an HTML file, for later use.
- 3. Email the report.
- 4. **Archive** the report.
 - a. The archived reports are filed under Install_Path\sitedb\reports.



E.g. C:\Program Files (x86)\Cathexis CathexisVision Suite WRV\sitedb\reports.

1.2 Create Report

To create a new report, or edit an existing one, select the relevant button or double-click the report. In the Report window that opens, parameters for the report must be configured, including the types of reports to be included in the report.

In the Report Template Editing window, there are two columns. The column on the left is populated with all the available Report Variables. The column on the right is filled with the variables that can be used by the Report Template. Each available **Section** will be explained in detail, below.

Report Site	Name				?	\times
Template name Title	Template name					
Section Cameras Database usage Disks Environment Events			Heading	Description		
File systems Hardware Add>> Fetch	Export	∨ Loa	Edit	OK Delete	Cance	:

Template Name: Give the template a name.

Title: Give this particular report a title (to be displayed on fetched report).

See below for the process of adding report types to this report, and for description of the report types selected.

- 1. Select a report variable from the Sections list on the left, and click Add>> to add it to the report template. Report template components will be shown in the list on the right.
 - a. Multiple report types from the Sections list may be added.
 - b. <u>Note</u>: Report types will appear in the fetched report in the order that they are added.
- 2. When adding a report variable to the current report template, a configuration window will open in which the parameters for that specific report variable must be defined before it is added to the current report template. See below for the full list of report types and configuration options.

Add>>	Select a report type and click to add to the current report template.
Edit	Select report type from current report template components and click to Edit parameters.
Delete	Select report type from current report template components and click to remove.
Fetch	Click to generate the current report template.
Export	Click to export the template as a local file on the NVR.
Load	Click to load the local file of an exported template.



1.3 Cameras Report

This reports the uptime/downtime of cameras on a site for a defined period, with options to define the report type.

	rt			?	×
Report type Can	nera log	\sim			
Time/Date					
Period Weel	k to date $~~$				
From 00	: 00 : 00 :	8 🗘	April	2019	\$
to 23	59 \$ 59 \$	14 🗘	April	2019	•
Per Day	~				
Settings					
Show came	ra up time ~	expressed	in percentag	e ~	
Show came		expressed	in percentag	e ~	
	es	expressed	in percentag	e 🗸	
Show failur	es	expressed	in percentag	e V	
Show failure	es y exceptions		in percentag	e >	
Show failure	es v exceptions 0 failures]	in percentag	e ~	
Show failur Only display	es y exceptions 0 failures]	in percentag	e ~	

Report Type

Camera log

Camera log

Time to repair

Choose one of the \sim descriptive Report Camera status by period Types.

Show failures tells the report to show the number of failures for a camera over the given period (a failure is when the camera goes from working to not working i.e. it fails.)

Note: A camera report that lists the currently failed cameras is added.

Only display exceptions tells the reports to only show cameras that meet the exception criteria, which the user specifies on that same page. This is useful to only see the problem cameras.



		1/4		2/4		3/4		4/4		5,	/4 (6/4		7/4	
Unit	Camera	Up	#Fail	Up	#Fail											
athexis Demo	Back Parking - Vivotek (4)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	99 %	1	
	Back Parking - Vivotek (3)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Demo Room - Axis P3224 (8)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Spar - POS Till (26)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Demo Room - Axis M3005 (7)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Front PTZ - Truvision (19)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway ANPR - Axis (14)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Road ANPR - Axis P1365 (24)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Highway SPEED DETECTION (20)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Perimeter - Axis Q1615 (23)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Thermal Road - Line Crossing (27)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Holdens ANPR - Dahua (21)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Back Door Exit IMPRO (2)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Front Door Exit IMPRO (18)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Back Door Entrance IMPRO (1)	100%	0	99%	1	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway ANPR- Hik (15)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway - Axis 6000e(A) (9)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway PTZ - Axis (16)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway - Axis 6000e(C) (11)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway - Axis 6000e(B) (10)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway - Axis 6000e(D) (12)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Canoe - Dynamic Background (6)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	School - Object Detection (25)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Driveway - Dahua (13)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	CATOBSERVER Demo Server (5)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Perimeter - Axis	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Front Door - Entrance(31)	100%	0	99%	1	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	
	Kitchen Door - Hikvision	0%	0	0%	0	37%	0	60%	1	0%	0	0%	0	0%	0	
	Driveway - Dahua PTZ (33)	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	100%	0	99%	1	100%	0	100%	0	

1.4 Database Usage Report

This reports the database usage, with the option to customise how the usage report is broken down, as well as to export the report in CSV.

💿 Database	?	×					
Report type	Database breakdown	by camer	a ~				
Notes Database rate by camera Database rate by hour							
CSV	Database breakdown Event frequency histor Events by hour	by camer					

Report Type. Choose from one of the descriptively titled Database Report Types.

Notes. Add some notes about the report, or why it is being fetched.

CSV. This will generate the information in Comma Separated Values, instead of a table. This is a standard representation of data, and can be moved into a spread-sheet, if necessary.

1.4.1 Database Usage Report Example



		Cathexis	Demo	
		CONTINUOU	IS RECDB	
Camera	Size (MB)	Retention (days)	Rate (kbps)	Span
Driveway - Dahua PTZ (33)	1058000	93.1	1077	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Perimeter - Axis	596000	93.8	602	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
CATOBSERVER Demo Server (5)	2000	76.2	2	2019/01/22 to 2019/03/15
Driveway - Dahua (13)	2387000	93.1	2432	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
School - Object Detection (25)	420000	93.8	424	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
Canoe - Dynamic Background (6)	919000	93.8	929	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
Driveway - Axis 6000e(C) (11)	469000	93.0	477	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Front PTZ - Truvision (19)	601000	93.1	612	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Back Door Exit IMPRO (2)	256000	93.8	258	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/05
Driveway - Axis 6000e(A) (9)	358000	93.1	364	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Front Door Exit IMPRO (18)	2000	25.9	7	2019/03/13 to 2019/03/29
Demo Room - Axis P3224 (8)	396000	93.8	400	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
Perimeter - Axis Q1615 (23)	979000	93.8	989	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
Back Parking - Vivotek (3)	2362000	93.0	2407	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Highway SPEED DETECTION (20)	1654000	93.8	1672	2019/01/04 to 2019/04/08
Driveway PTZ - Axis (16)	1049000	93.0	1068	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08
Driveway - Axis 6000e(B) (10)	545000	93.1	555	2019/01/05 to 2019/04/08

1.5 Disks Report

This generates a report on the disks, depending on the report type that is chosen.

💿 Disk report	? ×
Report type	Full report V
	Exceptions Full report
ОК	Cancel

Full Report: Will contain all available information on all disks, including temperature, and Raw Read Error Rates.

Exceptions: Will only display information regarding problematic drives.

1.5.1 Disks Full Report Example



0	Report										_		×
ſ	Report for Cathexis D	arban											^
	Report generated at 2019/04/08	12:27:51											
													-
	1. Disks												
	Unit: Catheria Demo												
	Sesic information												
	pevice: /dev/e model family: pevice model: momOly Perial number: 50026m	in 207400837 76n00384n	1209										
	owice: /dav/s model family: mavice model: scmddr Serial number: 50050 fine: 100 Ge Sour: enble	а											
	newice: /dev/s model family: newice model: Sri000 Serial number: ra270s firmers versions av70s Sirs: 10.0 r Scourr: erable	We0004-1221 #	51										
	Scour: enable												
	Device: /dev/s sodel family: Device model: Sr1000 Serial number: pa701 Firmere version: #070 Size: 10.0 r Sovar: enable	42 Web004-1221 12	0 1										
	rirmware version: av01 Size: 10.0 r Scarr: enable	***0004-12#1 # !											
	Device: /dev/e Model family:	ы.											
	Device: /dev/e model family: Device model: Sr1000 Serial number: sa790 rimmure version: av01 Sime: 10.0 y Souny: emable	Web004-1281 7	01										
	nevice: /dev/s model family: nevice model: Sricoo Serial number: nATFO firme: varian: avi Sirm: 10.0 r Scourt: enable	e We0004-1ss1 ko	01										
	rinnare version: av01 Sine: 10.0 m Scarr: enable	We0004-1281 io :											
	Device: /dev/e												
	endel family: nerte model: Sr1000 Seriel number: sal760 firmere version: arCl Sine: 10.0 r Sowar: enable	we0004-1221 iz	02										
	Sour: enable												
	SMART												
	10 Attribut	/dev/ed	ie Velue	Threaboli	Reliability								
	1 Rev road over rate		100	•	posiD/c								
	5 Reallocated acetor co		100	10	positive								
	9 Peveran haus coun 12 Device pever cycle o		100	•	positive								
	100 Unknown (100)		100	•	positive								
	101 Unknown (101) 170 Unknown (170)		100 100	•	positivo								
	170 Linknown (170) 171 Linknown (171)		100	•	positive								
	172 Urknown (172)		100	۰	positive								
	174 Uriknewn (174) 175 Uriknewn (175)		100	•	positive positive								
	175 Unknown (175)		100	•	positive								
	177 Unknown (177)		88	٠	positive								
	175 Unknown (176) 150 Unused reserved blog	court total	100	•	positive positive								
	155 SATA downahit over	munt .	25	•	positive								
	157 Reported uncorrectab		100	٠	positivo								
	194 Temperature 195 Hardware BCC Recov		32 100	•	positive								
	198 Realisested event ex		100	•	positive								
	197 Current pending sect		100	•	positive								
	199 Uibe DMA CRC error 201 Seft_Road_Brier_Rel			•	positive positive								~
L													
				_		_							
	Print			E	xport	E-mai	1	Archive				🖸 🖸	Close

1.5.2 Disks Exceptions Report Example



Report				—)
Dowout	fan Cathor	de Duchen			
	rated at 2019/04	kis Durban			
Report gene	rated at 2019/04	4/09 07:05:49			
1. Disks					
NO EXCEPT	IONS				

1.6 Environment Report

This generates a report on the hardware components, such as fan speed, voltages, CPU temperatures, and more.

<u>Note</u>: Environment report only available on supported Cathexis hardware.

Currently supported:

- DFI SB300
- DFI SB600

Supported from CathexisVision 2019.2 and later:

- DFI SB300
- DFI SB600
- DFI SD331



 Environment Report 		?	×
Time/Date			
Period Week to date 🗸			
From 00 🗘 00 🗘 00 🗘	15 🜩 April	~ 2019	÷
to 23 🗢 59 🜩 59 🜩		~ 2019	
Per Day 🗸			
Parameters			
Report type Full report 🗸			
	ОК	Can	cel

1.6.1 <u>Environment Report Example</u>

napon	- 6 7
Report for SiteName	
Report generated at 29/04/2019 OB:06:03	
1. Environment	
iwani: 28(84/2019 00:00:03 to 28(84/2019 08:08:13) Her: day	
CATHERDS HIR	
Day Samparature (degC) Head Hen 29(4) 30,61 32,83 31,24 Current: 31.5 (degC)	
Storber Inversature (Jung) Ferrard Henri I. Henri, A. Awi 25(4 30.0.1.30.7.1.30.59 Current: 30.7.0 (ag);	
willings trues flood Feed Mer Hans Auer 2014 0.53 1.17 0.43 Content: L07 Vice	
Windows Yeard Your Massa Keet 2014 3.0.0.3, 90, 3.00 Current: J.love: Current: J.love:	
Visitigg 20 Vict Mon Mon	
Statistics Table (Mol) Mol Mol	
Cell Se (1970)	
Sindem for 1 (0044) Memory 1 (0045, 0 (004, 0 (004, 0 (004, 0 (004, 0 (044, 044,	
Solites For 20 2010) Mend No. Hos: Nov. Ave. 2014 0.00.030.00 Current: 0.0.0914	
	Activate Windows Go to Setting: to activate Windows
Print Export E-mail Ardvive	000

1.7 Events Report

Event reports are only supported on NetBSD DVR Systems. For event reports on all other supported systems, please consult the <u>Forensic Tool section</u>.

Select the report period, and then define the report type.

Full Report: Full report showing details for all supported hardware components.

Exceptions: Report showing only the problem components.



1.8 File System Report

🗩 Fil	e system re.	••	?	\times
Repo	rt type	Full	report	~
	ОК		Cance	el

This generates a report for the file system, showing either the full report of the entire filesystem or the exceptions report showing only the filesystem problems.

1.8.1 File System Full Report Example

0	Report				-		×
ă	Report f	ated at 20	19/04/16 12:21	:17			
	Unit	Device	Description	Capacity	Time till f	ull	
	RACHEL-PC	?					
	Print	Expor	t E-m	ail /	Archive	😮 cl	ose

1.8.2 File System Exceptions Report Example

Report	_		×
Report for SiteName			
Report generated at 2019/04/16 12:20:43			
1. File systems			
NO EXCEPTIONS			
Print Export E-mail	Archive	🛛 😧 C	lose

1.9 Hardware Report

This will fetch a full list of the relevant hardware components inside the servers. (Includes pc hardware, and Cathexis specific hardware). This report type is not configurable and is added straight to the template. 005-20200528-250 28 May 2020



1.9.1 <u>Hardware Report Example</u>

Report generated at 2019/04/08 13:14:18					
. Hardware					
		PC Components			
Unit	Hotherbeard	And the second s		CPU Speed	RAM
Cathexis Demo	Unknown	Intel(R) Core(TM) (7-6700 CPU	3408 Mh		8143 MB
Cethexis Denio (SLAVE)	Unknown	Intel(R) Core(TM) (7-2500 CPU	3392 Mu		\$109 MB
		Cathexis Components			
Unit		Module	Serial Number		Extra
Cathexis Demo	10 Boerd	NVR Oc	k21e07848		
Cathexis Demo (SLAVE)	1D Board	NVR 3e	fcf1da416		
		Hard Drives			
Unit	Device	Serial number	Disk label	Size	Warnings
Cathexis Demo	/dev/sda	500268776400384	State State State	120 G8	Second Second
	/dex/sdb	ZAZ7QM4W		10.0 TB	
	/dev/sdc	ZAZ7C1ZZ		10.0 TB	
	/dew/sdd	ZA2700X7		10.0 TB	
	/dew/sde	ZA27POGD		10.0 TB	
	/dev/sdf	ZA2766CZ		10.0 TB	
athexis Demo (SLAVE)	/dev/sda	53Y9NF0K101863A		250 G8	
	Network interfaces		-		
Unit	Interface	IP address			
athexis Demo	Intel(R)	192.168.1.181			
	Intel(R)	192.168.34.40			
athexis Demo (SLAVE)	Realtek P	192.168.34.42			
	DGE-560T	192.163.1.180			

1.10License Features Report

This generates a report for the site's license features. Note that this report has been replaced by the updated Licenses report (1.11, below), but is retained in the software in case users have previously configured and use this report.

This report is not configurable and is added straight to the template.



1.10.1 License Features Report Example

Report

Report for Cathexis Durban

Report generated at 2019/04/08 13:15:42

1. License Features

License	Addition date	Expiry date
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (1/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (2/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (3/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (4/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (5/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (6/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (7/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (8/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (9/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (10/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (11/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (12/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (13/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (14/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (15/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (16/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (17/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (18/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (19/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALG_ANALYTICS_III (20/20)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_ACCESS	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_ACCESS_DOOR_UNLIMITED	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_ALARM	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_PRO	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_GATEWAY	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_API	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_ALARM_QUEUES	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_CLIENTMAP	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_DEVICE	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (1/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (2/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (3/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (4/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (5/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (6/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (7/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (8/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (9/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE_CATVISION_FAILOVER_CAMERA (10/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
FEATURE CATVISION FAILOVER CAMERA (11/30)	11/03/2019	10/03/2020
Print Export E-mail Arc	hive	

1.11Licenses Report

This will fetch a report on all the of all the licenses, and their descriptions, on all of the units attached to the site. (This will exclude the Base Stations.) This report is an update to the older License Features Report (above).



1.11.1.1 Licenses Report Example

Report

1. Licenses

	Ca	athexis D	emo			
License code	Description	Q	uantity	Addition d	ate	Demo expi
CACC-3000	Access control bundle	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:09	2020/03/10 19:2
CALM-2000	Alarm panel device	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:09	2020/03/10 19:2
CAMG-1000	Alarm management gateway	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:09	2020/03/10 19:2
CANA-3001	Analytics - level 3	7		2019/03/11 13	:40:04	2020/03/10 19:2
CANA-3001	Analytics - level 3	13	3	2019/03/11 13	:40:05	2020/03/10 19:2
CAPI-1000	API	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:09	2020/03/10 19:2
CBAS-7100	Alarm management client	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:09	2020/03/10 19:2
CCVM-1001	CCVM (Camera Version Migration li	cense) 80)	2019/03/11 13	:41:33	2020/03/10 19:3
CDEV-2000	Other device	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:21	2020/03/10 19:2
CFOR-1001	Failover camera	18	3	2019/03/11 13	:40:21	2020/03/10 19:2
CFOR-1001	Failover camera	12	2	2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CFOR-2000	Failover server	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CIXP-1100	Impro IXP20 bundle (x8 Doors)	2		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CLFF-2000	LPR freeflow engine	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CLIC-2000	IP camera (2017)	40)	2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CLPK-2000	LPR parking engine	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CLPR-1001	LPR lane	4		2019/03/11 13	:48:46	2020/03/10 19:3
CLPR-1001	LPR lane	8		2019/03/11 13	:54:31	2020/03/10 19:4
CLPR-2000	LPR device	4		2019/03/11 13	:48:46	2020/03/10 19:3
CMAP-2000	Site map	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CPOS-3000	POS bundle	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CPOS-3000	POS bundle	1		2019/03/11 13	:57:12	2020/03/10 19:4
CPRM-2000	Premium package	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CSTR-2000	Streaming file device	1		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CVGA-2000	Virtual matrix monitor	4		2019/03/11 13	:40:22	2020/03/10 19:2
CVGA-2001	Video walls	1		2019/03/14 15	:49:41	2020/03/13 21:3
	Cathexis	Domo (S				
License code		Quantit		dition date	D	emo expirv
CACC-3000	Access control bundle	1	-		_	03/09 17:01:22
CFFT-2000	Future Fibre Technology device	1				03/09 17:01:22
CIMP-3000	Impro Portal access control bundle					03/09 17:01:22
CLDT-1001	LPR detector	6				03/09 17:01:22
CLFF-2000	LPR freeflow engine	1				03/09 17:01:22
CLIC-2000	IP camera (2016)	10	,			03/09 17:01:22
0210 2000		10	2010/	00,00 11112:01	2013/	00,00 17:01:22

1.11.2 <u>NTP Queries Report</u>

Export E-mail Archive

If NTP has been setup, this generates a report for the NTP Queries for the site. **Note:** this report is only applicable to NetBSD DVR systems.

 CLIC-2000
 IP camera (2017)
 10
 2018/03/09 11:12:34
 2019/03/09 17:01:22

 CLPK-2000
 LPR parking engine
 1
 2018/03/09 11:12:34
 2019/03/09 17:01:22

 CPOS-3000
 POS bundle
 1
 2018/03/09 11:12:34
 2019/03/09 17:01:23

 CPRM-2000
 Premium package
 1
 2018/03/09 11:12:34
 2019/03/09 17:01:22

 CVGA-2000
 Virtual matrix monitor
 4
 2018/03/09 11:12:34
 2019/03/09 17:01:22

 CZP2-2000
 Ziton ZP2 fire panel
 1
 2018/04/04 12:15:55
 2019/04/04 18:04:43

Print



1.11.3 <u>NTP Queries Report Example</u>

0	Report				-		×
	Report for Cath	evis Durb	an				
	Report for Cat	IEXIS DUID	an				
	Report generated at 2019	9/04/08 13:23:23	3				
				 			_
	1. NTP Queries						
	Unit						
	Cathexis Demo	Not supported					
	Cathexis Demo (SLAVE)	Not supported					
	Print Export	E-mail	Archive			🙆 d	
	Finit Export	c-mail	Archive			U U	use

1.12Reboots Report

This generates a report of the system reboots. This is an important thing to monitor.

Reboots
Image: Reboot summary Image: Full reboot history 10 reboots
For time <u>in the Week to date</u> show reboots by
hour of day
🔲 day of week
🔲 day of month
OK Cancel

Click to enable a Reboot Summary in the report, and/or a Full Reboot history (specifying the number of reboots to display in the report).

To change report period, click on the blue hyperlink in the Week to date

This will open the calendar settings:

- **From-To** period. (E.g. from X date-and-time, to Y date-and-time).
- From the **previous** X hours, or
- Over a **period** of time, starting at a set time, on a set day.



1.12.1 <u>Reboot Report Example</u>

L. Reboots						
Unit	Last boot	Up time	Last mon	th Last we	eek Last da	y Last hour
Cathexis Demo	2019/03/23 21:46:45	2 weeks, 2 days, 9 hou	rs 20	0	0	0
Cathexis Demo (SLAVE)	2019/04/05 11:02:29	3 days, 20h19	17	6	0	0
Unit	Halt time	Boot time	Reason		/ersion	
Cathexis Demo	2019/03/23 21:45:11	2019/03/23 21:46:22	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/23 14:01:18	2019/03/23 16:01:23	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/23 06:00:31	2019/03/23 06:01:31	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/22 14:01:54	2019/03/22 16:02:23	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/21 12:03:46	2019/03/21 14:02:04	Power failure	\$Name:_re	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/21 02:00:57	2019/03/21 02:01:57	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/20 12:03:39	2019/03/20 14:02:16	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/20 09:04:09	2019/03/20 10:04:51	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/19 12:07:26	2019/03/19 13:11:21	Power failure	\$Name:_re	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/19 10:07:50	2019/03/19 12:06:38	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
Cathexis Demo (SLAVE)	2019/04/05 11:01:02	2019/04/05 11:02:30	Command line	sName:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/04/04 08:44:28	2019/04/04 08:46:36	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	.1_\$
	2019/04/04 08:37:45	2019/04/04 08:38:45	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/04/04 08:32:42	2019/04/04 08:33:42	Power failure	\$Name:_re	elease_5044c	.1_\$
	2019/04/04 08:17:12	2019/04/04 08:18:12	Power failure	\$Name:_n	elease_5044c	.1_\$
	2019/04/04 07:55:30	2019/04/04 08:03:19	Power failure	\$Name:_re	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/23 15:45:50	2019/03/23 16:01:42	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044d	.1_\$
	2019/03/21 15:07:03	2019/03/21 15:08:35	Command line	sName:_n	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/21 06:09:24	2019/03/21 14:02:25	Power failure	\$Name:_r	elease_5044c	1_\$
	2019/03/20 13:09:49	2019/03/20 14:02:26	Power failure	\$Name:_re	elease_5044c	1_\$

1.13 Recording Times Report

This generates a report on the amount of time each camera, on each server, has spent recording. This report is not configurable and is added straight to the template.

Note:

- Cameras that didn't record will be included and highlighted in red. 1.
- 2. Cameras that haven't recorded in the last day will be highlighted in orange.
- 3. Cameras are listed alphabetically.

- ø ×



1.13.1 <u>Recording Times Report Example</u>

Connect for Cathonic De	unhan				
Report for Cathexis Du	21 + 22 - 23 - 2				
leport generated at 2019/04/08 13:	28.06				
. RecordingTimes					
		Cathexis De	ime		
Camera	Detabase	First	Last	Duration	Time since last recording
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			messe, 2 days. 18 hourt	
	DOORS CONTINUOUS RECI				
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			Li meteta, 6 idant, 20 istani	
	DOORS CONTINUOUS RECI				
	CONTINUOUS RECOB			13 weeks, 1 day, 22 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECDB			13 weeks, 1 day, 22 hours	
Canoe - Dynamic Background (6)				13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR				3 weeks, 3 days, 4 hours
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECDB			13 weeks, 2 days, 21 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			13 weeks, 1 day, 23 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECDB			13 weeks, 1 day, 22 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR	14963 05/01/2019	13458 06/04/2019 1	13 weeks, 1 day, 23 hours	Currently recording
Driveway - Axis 6000e(0) (12)					5
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			13 weeks, 1 day, 22 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR ANPR RECOR			13 weeks, 2 days, 0 hours 7 weeks, 1 day, 18 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			2 weeks, 4 days, 6 hours	
	ANPR RECOS				
	CONTINUOUS RECDS			7 weeks, 1 day, 17 hours	
	DOORS CONTINUOUS RECT			13 weeks, 1 day, 23 hours	
	CONTINUOUS AECOR				Lanes, Julius, 6 haury
	DOORS CONTINUOUS RECI				
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			3 weeks, 6 days, 22 hours 13 weeks, 2 days, 2 hours	
Highway SPEED DETECTION (20)				13 weeks, 2 days, 2 hours 13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
	ANPR RECOR			7 weeks, 1 day, 17 hours	
	DOORS CONTINUOUS ACC			weeks, 1 day, 17 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECEB			13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOR			13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
	ANPR RECOB			7 weeks, 1 day, 16 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECDB			13 weeks, 1 day, 22 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECDS			13 weeks, 2 days, 20 hours	
	CONTINUOUS RECOB			13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
Thermal Road - Line Crossing (27)				13 weeks, 2 days, 19 hours	
internal works - Life Crossing (27)	CONTINUOUS RECEB	10000 0401/2019	13059-09/04/2019-1	13 weeks, 2 sillyit, 19 hours	concern recording
Cathorin	Demo (SLAVE)				
Camera Database First Last D		and the second se			
Canter a Datestate Fran Lan D	And a company of the second second	(coursely			
Print Export E-	-mail Archive				

1.14 Software Report

This will list the version of **CathexisVision** running on each server. This report is not configurable and is added straight to the template.



1.14.1 <u>Software Report Example</u>

0	Report				-		×
	Dowort for Coth	avia Durhan					_
	Report for Cath						
f	Report generated at 2019	/04/08 13:29:25					
-							
	1. Software						
	Unit Cathexis Demo	Software CathexisVision 2019 (5044c1)	Arch	Kernel Windows 7 (service pack 1.0)			
		CathexisVision 2019 (5044c1) CathexisVision 2019 (5044c1)		Windows 10			
	Carlexis Denio (SEAVE)	Califord 1001 2013 (JUTICI)	100	10			
	Print Export	E-mail Archive	•			- 🙆	Close

1.15 System Report

This will list the Time Zone related information (Time, Time Zone, Daylight Savings). This report is not configurable and is added straight to the template.



1.15.1 System Report Example

Report for Cathexis Durban Report generated at 2019/04/08 13:32:56										
1. System Site ID: 48808DDC_5061	817B									
Unit	Timezone	Current time	Daylight savings							
Cathexis Demo	South Africa Standard Time	2019/04/08 13:32:56	no							
Cathexis Demo (SLAVE)	South Africa Standard Time	2019/04/08 13:32:52	no							
Print Export	E-mail Arch	ive			(2) (lose				

1.16 System Setup Report

This relates to the cameras/encoders attached to the system, and how they are setup. There are two options a **Camera Recording Setup** report, and an **Encoder Setup** report.

🥺 Database Usage R ? 🛛 🗙	Camera Recording	This will pull all the information related to the actual recording of images. Such as the frame-
Report type Camera recording setup Camera recording setup Notes Encoder setup	Setup	rate of recording, the pre-event recording time, and the post-event recording time.
OK Cancel	Encoder Setup	This will pull all the information related to the setup of the encoders such as: the Type of Encoder, the IP address of the encoder, the name
		of the camera, which input (physical input on the Encoder) it represents, and the Firmware.



1.16.1 <u>System Setup: Camera Recording Setup Report Example</u>

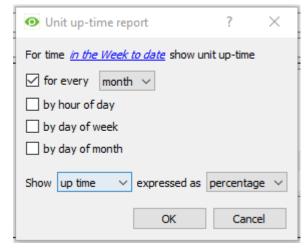
leport.			
Repo	ort for Cathexis Durba	n	
court .	generated at 2019/04/09 07:28:01		
	dening and an entitle data to reason		
. Ca	mera recording setu		
	Cathexis De		-
	Camera	Type	ProEvent Timer
ans II	D Name		Fps Fps
7	Back Parking - Vivotek (4)	£	
1	Back Parking - Vivotek (3)	8	
	Demo Room - Axis P3224 (8)	E	
1	Spar - POS Till (26)	E	
1	Demo Room - Axis M3005 (7)	Ε	
17	Front PTZ - Truvision (19)	E (ptp)	
1	Driveskay ANPR - Axis (14)	ε	
5	Road ANPR - Axis P1365 (24)		
6	Highway SPEED DETECTION (20	E	
7	Perimeter - Axis Q1615 (23)		
38	Thermal Road - Line Crossing (2	7) E	
11	Holdens ANPR - Dahua (21)	E	
8	Back Door Exit IMPRO (2)	6	
19	Front Door Exit IMPRO (18)	E	
н	Back Door Entrance IMPRO (1)	E	
0	Driveway ANPR- Hik (15)	£	
8	Driveway - Axis 6000e(A) (9)	ε	
6	Driveway PTZ - Axis (16)	E (ptz)	
2	Drivenizy - Axis 6000e(C) (11)	E	
13	Drivesway - Axis 6000e(B) (10)	E	
4	Driveway - Axis 6000e(D) (12)		
81	Canoe - Dynamic Background (6)	E	
12	School - Object Detection (25)		
83	Drivesay - Dahua (13)	E	
6	CATOBSERVER Demo Server (5)	.8	
17	Perimeter - Axis	ε	
9	Front Door - Entrance(31)	ε	
90	Kitchen Door - Hikvision	E	
91	Driveway - Dahua PTZ (33)	E (ptz)	
ie.	Epot E-mil Achie		

1.16.2 System Setup: Encoder Setup Report Example

	prevented at 2019/04/09 07:28:50	an l						
1. E	ncoder setup							
Cam I	D Cam name	Oriver	10 1	Enc input	Cathexis Demo		Serial S	Ferments
7	Back Parking - Vivotek (4)	vhotek	192,168,7.46		198332	000201146526		P8332-WTK-0401a
54	Back Parking - Vivotek (3)	vivolek	192.168.7.20		T-CRCRR	00020135F419		388382-WTK-0004
59	Demo Room - Axis P3224 (8)	and the	192,168,3.121 1		0/05 P3224-UVE	ACCOME DOLE 7D		\$75.34
50	Spar - POS TII (26)	legacy_virtual	106.1.1.1 1	1				
61	Demo Raom - Axis M3005 (7)	ants	192.168.3.109 1	C 7	UCS H0005	ACCORT/6388/X		5.50.5.4
100	Highway - Vetual	legacy_vitual	104.1.1.1	C				
107	Front PT2 - Truvision (19)	truvisionv2	192.168.5.199 1	(TWP-1300	TVP-1101201411	17CCIIIR4892888138	VS.La
111	Dehreway ANPR - Axis (14)	ants	192.168.5.170 1		NOS MU125	ACCOMENDIA		6.35.2
115	Road ANPR - Axis P1365 (24)	aris	192.168.3.151 1		405 P1365	ACCOBE2930DA		6.30.1
126	Highway SPEED DETECTION (20)		105.1.1.1					
117	Perimeter - Axis Q(615 (23)	anis	192.168.3.119.1		405 Q6615	ACCOR 298482		6.50.2.2
28	Thermal Road - Line Crossing (27)		159.1.33.300 1			1022000000	(B)	References and the
111	Holdens ANPR - Dahua (21)	dahua	192.168.3.92			T2C4W361W000		2.210.0001.0.8:2014-08-09
36	Beck Door Exit DMIRO (2)	onull	192.168.3.129 1				20131125888984423229227	V5.0.8 built 130900
139	Front Door Exit IMPRID (18)	onut	192.168.5.54		liand Z2V6-F	00408912384;		2120150519452
44	Back Door Entrance 3MPRID (1)	onuit	192.168.3.182		1264 53113_539	aacet5e6b6398cb	а.	V4.02.811.00002531.10030.240800
147	lpr2 Driveway ANPR-Hk (15)	legacy_virtual hisukaonv2	149,0.0.1 1		05-2CD4A26/WD-625	-	-125201604140250858251392	
163	Spar Food - Virtual		107.0.6.1		CO-2CLPANIN WU-SCO	09-20090/19-900	HERE ALS A CONTRACT AND A	1243
162	Spar Bakery - Virtual	legacy_virtual legacy_virtual	108.6.6.1					
65	Driveway - Axis 6300e(A) (9)	ants	192,168,3.88		U25 06000-8	ACCORDING/		5.65.1.1
66	Orhendy PTZ - Avis (35)	aris	192,168,3.97			ACCORE43426E		6.50.2.2
22	Driveway - Axis 6000e(C) (11)	ants	192.168.3.88 3		NOS 06005-E PALIS	ACCORDINATE		\$45.1.1
23	Driveway - Axis 6000e(8) (10)	-	192,058,3.88		405 06000-E	ACCORDING NO		545.1.1
24	Driveway - Axis 6000e(D) (12)	ants	192.168.3.88		U05 06000-E	ACCORDING NO		5.651.1
81	Canoe - Dynamic Background (6)		202.0.0.1 1					
82	School - Object Detection (25)	legacy_virtual	211.0.0.1					
183	Driveway - Dahua (13)	gencoder	192.168.7.21	0		d199b850174fa4c	(la6560ecfdbea1399	
185	CATORSERVER Demo Server (5)	legacy_catobserver	127.0.0.1	52 8	119	rm=uz.4.100.500	0.5800	
86	050_350m_2people_win_bush	legacy_virtual	150.0.0.1 1	t (
187	Perimeter - Axis	avis	192.168.5.50		005 P1415-LE	ACCORES-409FB		6.50.1
(8)	Front Door - Entrance(31)	dehue	192,168.3.187 1		IPC-BDW2421R-25	2H02DC8F9A0003		2.600.0005.0.R:2016-12-19
90	Kitchen Door - Hikvision	hikulaionv2	192.168.5.125 1		DS-2007164-E		13112588WR442327102	V5.2.0
191	Driveway - Dahus FTZ (33)	dahua	192.168.3.105 1	1 8	044-582501207-HN	2F036EAP4N0000	25	2.400.0006.9.8.74.2021.3N.NR

1.17 Unit Up-Time Report

Up-Time is the amount of time that the unit stays on between reboots, or failures. It is of similar importance to Reboots.



Define the report period by clicking on the blue hyperlink and defining the rest of the settings.

Define whether to report on Uptime or Downtime, and to express the results in time or in percentage.



1.17.1 Unit Up-time Report Example

		<u>xis Durban</u>	
leport generate	d at 2019/04/	/09 07:31:15	
. Unit up	o time		
		er Day in the Last s	month
Time	Cathexis De	mo Cathexis Demo	(SLAVE) Total
2019/03/01		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/02		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/03		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/04		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/05		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/06		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/07		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/08		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/09		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/10		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/11		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/12		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/13		0.11%	0.05%
2019/03/14		0.11%	0.05%
2019/03/15		4.84%	6.52%
2019/03/16		0.00%	4.05%
2019/03/17		0.00%	8.06%
2019/03/18		9.31%	12.73%
2019/03/19		0.00%	10.28%
2019/03/20		3.65%	8.05%
2019/03/21		32.95%	20.62%
2019/03/22		0.00%	4.18%
2019/03/23		0.00%	4.80%
2019/03/24		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/25		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/26		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/28		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/28		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/29		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/30		0.00%	0.00%
2019/03/31	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Total		1.68%	2.56%
TOUN	3,4470	1.0010	2.58%

1.18User Defined Report



This report allows the user to input custom text that will simply be added as a text section in the report. This is useful when adding general notes or information to the report.



1.18.1 User Defined Report Example

0	Report	-		×
	Report for Cathexis Durban			
	Report generated at 2019/04/08 13:42:33			
	1. User KaylanM BastanP			
	AndrewM			
	Print Export E-mail Archive		₍₃₎ c	lose

1.19VMX Counters Report

Last 30 ≑ entries
Report on
Power-on resets
Brown-out resets
Watchdog resets
Register reloads
OK Cancel

This generates a report on the Video Matrix (VMX) Counters on the unit.

Note that this is only used for troubleshooting statistics for DVRs with an installed Cathexis Video Matrix.



1.20VMX Temperature Report

9 VMX Te	emperatures	?	\times
Report type	e VMX temperatures log \vee		
Time/Dat	e		
Period	Month to date $\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \$		
From	00 🗘 00 🗘 00 🗘 1 🗘 April	~ 2019 ;	•
to	23 🗘 59 🗘 59 🗘 30 🗘 April	~ 2019	•
Per	Day ~		
	OK	Canc	el

This generates a report for the Video Matrix (VMX) Temperature on the unit, according to the configured options.

Note: this only applies to DVRs with an installed Cathexis Video Matrix.

1.21Windows Unit Report

🛃 IP address	? <mark>x</mark>
IP address	
ок	Cancel

This report pulls information for Windows Base Stations that use the site. This will include hardware, and software information about the Base Station, as well as the **CathexisVision** applications that it has been using.



Setup Tab: Configure Failover Servers

1	Failc	over Introduction	. 204
	1.1	Model	. 204
	1.2	Licensing	. 205
	1.3	Recommendations	. 206
	1.4	Minimising Failover Loss	. 206
	1.5	Limitations	. 206
	1.6	Example	. 206
2	Setu	p	. 208
	2.1	Introduction	. 208
	2.2	Requirements	. 208
	2.3	Configuration	. 208
3	Syste	em Restore after Failover	. 212
	3.1	Restoring a Site Master Recording Server	. 212
	3.2	Restoring a Site Slave Recording Server	. 212



1 Failover Introduction

1.1 Model

Cathexis uses a **hotspare** model for failover. In this model, failover servers monitor the recording servers. When a recording server is down, one of the failover servers assumes the functions of the failed recording server.

In failover mode, the failover server operates exactly like the failed recording server, and the site continues to function, as if the recording server had not failed. Video is buffered on the failover server, and re-inserted into the original recording server's database, when it restarts.

It is possible to have multiple failover servers monitoring a site. More failover servers mean less risk of downtime. <u>Note</u>: One failover server can only assume the function of a single recording server at a time.



Image Above: A site, in normal configuration, with the Hotspare Server available to assume the functions of a Recording Server.

Note: there are different IP addresses for the Recording and Hotspare servers.

- The failover unit is represented with the unit icon to the left.
- It is distinguished from regular units by the lifebuoy/lifesaver image.





Image Above: A site, in Failover configuration, with the Hotspare Server having now assumed the functions of the failed Recording Server 192.168.34.54. The Hotspare Server could assume either of the Recording Servers functions.

1.2 Licensing

Each failover server requires a failover server license (using **CFOR-2000**), and an adequate number of failover camera licenses (**CFOR-10xx**). <u>Note</u>: The failover servers and camera licenses are all loaded onto the site master server.

- 1. The number of failover camera licenses, must be equal to, or greater than, the number of cameras on the recording server that is to be failed over. (I.e. if a recording server has more cameras than there are failover camera licenses it will not get failed over.)
- If there are multiple failover servers, the failover camera licenses will be distributed evenly between them. (E.g. with 3 failover servers, and 90 failover camera licenses, each failover server will get 30 camera licenses.)
- 3. All Cathexis SAM encoders require failover licenses. Licenses are required per channel.

Note: Before the failover server is licensed, the status bar license warning will be red, and if it is expanded, the description should be that the failover server is unlicensed. By adding the required number of failover camera licenses, the status bar license warning should disappear.



1.3 Recommendations

When configuring a site with failover, there a few things the designer can do to maximise system up-time:

- 1. Have a highly reliable site master. This is important for two reasons:
 - i. External viewers connect to the site using the IP address of the site master. If the site master fails, the external connections fail.
 - ii. The site master disseminates the information of the site to the slaves on the site. When the site master is down, this dissemination does not happen and the site operates sub-optimally.
- 2. Don't attach any cameras to the site master, and disable failing over of the site master (this is so that if the site master does fail, it does not use one of the failover servers that could be used for a recording server).
- 3. Configure VGA monitors on the site master.
- 4. Storage space: there needs to be enough recording storage on the failover server to serve for the maximum expected downtime of the most active unit being failed over. (So, if it is expected to have a maximum of one day's downtime, there must be sufficient storage to serve for this period.)

1.4 Minimising Failover Loss

Failover loss is less than 30 seconds, during the switch from one server to the next.

To ensure that there is **zero failover loss**:

Ensure relevant cameras have been configured for continuous recording to an SD card on the camera.

If continuous recording to an SD card on the camera is configured, this ensures that the footage is also accessible from the user interface and covers the loss of 30 seconds (or less) during the server switchover.

1.5 Limitations

- Servers with frame-grabber cards (AVM/VOM) cannot be failed over.
- The recording server needs to use the 'Advanced' database for reinsertion. This is standard for CathexisVision 2015 and onwards.

1.6 Example

Single site with the following:

2x NVR's with 64 cameras on each (one is the site master NVR)1x NVR with 50 cameras1x NVR with Gateway

Single server Failover setup:

1x Failover NVR with 64 Failover Camera licenses - assuming provision for only a single server failure at any one time.



Multiple server failover setup:

To have failover on all 4 site NVR's simultaneously, 4 failover servers with 256 Failover Camera Licenses (4 x 64) are required. The camera licenses are shared across all failover servers and since the maximum number on a single server is 64, all servers must have access to 64 camera licenses.

The Gateway WIN7 machine, if part of the site, will be failed over but the gateway functionality will not be functional due to the IP address change – there is therefore no advantage in having Failover on this unit for its Gateway functionality. If the Gateway PC was excluded from the site then only 3x Failover Servers and 192x Failover Camera Licenses (3 x 64) would be required.



2 Setup

2.1 Introduction

The failover configuration has two levels:

- 1. The failover server software needs to be installed on the failover NVR/s.
- 2. The site needs to be configured to have access to the available failover server/s.

2.2 Requirements

Ensure that the failover and recording server (NVR) times are synchronised. This is a critical requirement for the database items recorded to the failover server to be correctly re-inserted into the recording server's database.

2.3 Configuration

2.3.1 Failover NVR Configuration

A **CathexisVision** failover server is installed with the regular **CathexisVision** installer. After installation, running the GUI should popup a message saying "This server is running as a hot spare".

2.3.1.1 Install the CathexisVision Software

The failover server will need the CathexisVision Software installed on it.	Installation Type Installation Type Select whether to install a full NVR system or a failover system for the site CATHEXIS
During the installation process, there will be a prompt to choose between a Full NVR System and a Failover System , for this installation, choose the Failover System .	 Full NVR System Failover System
Cathexis Cat Vision Suite	<u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext Cancel

NVR



2.3.1.2 Check Installation

After a successful installation, if attempting to run **CathexisVision**, by double clicking on the **CathexisVision** icon, the dialogue box to the right will appear:



2.3.1.3 Site Failover Configuration

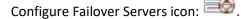
Each unit failed over will need to be set up to do so. All failover servers are added to the site on the site master. Configuring individual master/slave recording servers is not required for failover setup.

2.3.1.4 Open the Failover Panel

To open the Failover setup, follow the instructions below.

tings Help
Cameras
🚳 Map
Databases
🛞 Setup

After logging into the site, to open Configure Server simply click on Site \rightarrow Open Tab \rightarrow Setup. Once in the Setup Tab click on the



Note: Right-Clicking on the tab of any open site will bring up the same menu as the one accessed via the method above.

2.3.1.5 Add a Failover Server

Add failover server				
Add failover server				
Set failover server connection details 🗮				
Name IIP address				
Next > Cancel				

Clicking on will open the dialogue to add a new failover server.

Add a descriptive **name** for the failover unit.

Enter the **IP address** of the failover unit.

Click **Next** to proceed to adding the failover database.

2.3.1.6 Configure Failover Network Interface

When a failover server has multiple network interfaces, it can be configured specifically to use one of them when registering itself in the site.

Click on the Edit button and click on the Network Interfaces tab.

From the drop-down menu, select the required network adaptor.



<u>Note</u>: If left on **Auto**, the system will try to match the failover server's network card to one of the available network adaptors. This can cause problems if the network card or adaptor is not correctly labelled, resulting in the incorrect adaptor being selected. It is recommended to simply select the correct network adaptor to prevent this from happening.

2.3.1.7 Define the Global Failover Settings

🐷 Settings 💦 💽 💌
Settings Edit the global failover settings
Downtime for failover 10sec ਵ
OK Cancel

Click on Settings, inside the Failover panel.

Here, define the duration of **downtime** that is required for the failover server to take over.

Check Failover site master to failover the site master unit. (Note: outside connectivity will be lost when the site master is in failover.)

2.3.1.8 Database

Database

Create database

Name	Failov	Failover Database			
Max days recording					
Write policy	_	Maximise performance			
Total size	- Maxin				
Slices					

2.3.1.9 Check that server is online

Name	IP address	Status	License
Windows 7 failover	192.168.3.242	Offline	0

This is the database which resides on the failover server itself. The larger the database the more recording it can do, in its capacity as a failed over unit.

<u>Note</u>: This dialogue will only appear when editing a newly created failover server.

Once the server has been added, its status, and licensing can be seen in the Failover panel.

2.3.1.10 Failover Insert Database

When the failed over server comes back online, the recordings that were stored on the Failover NVR will be moved back to it. Many servers will have multiple active databases; as such select which database these recordings get inserted into.

The reinsertion time for the video is dependent on the current recording server load onto which the databases are being updated due to the lower priority level of this process.

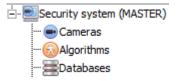


2.3.1.10.1 Navigate to the Databases Panel

Site Layouts Tools Set	tings Help
Copen tab 🛛 🔸	Cameras
🚷 Close site's tabs	🌍 Map
💡 Change password	Databases
💡 Change login	🛞 Setup
A C 100	

After logging into the site, to open Configure Server simply click on **Site** —> **Open Tab** —> **Setup.** Once in the Setup Tab click on the

Configure Servers icon: Expand the server, and left-click on Databases:



2.3.1.10.2 Select the Insert Database

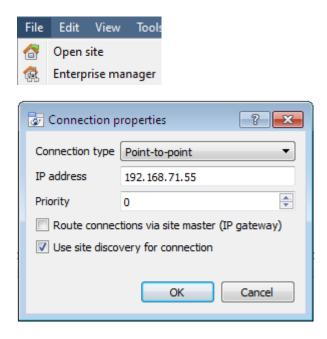
Settings	Road partition DB select database
Failover insert database	select database 🔻

At the bottom of the databases panel, the Failover settings section will be visible. Click on "Select database" and select the database to reinsert the failed over recordings into.

2.3.1.11 Client Viewer Settings

If the failover is set up so that the site master will also be failed over, **Use site discovery for connection** option must be checked. This is important because, when a unit is failed over, its IP address will change. If this option is not enabled, and the site master gets failed over, the client will have the wrong target address for the master unit. If this happens, the client will not be able to access the site.

To do this:



- 1. Open the Enterprise manager, via the File menu.
- 2. Select site from the Site panel.
- Right-click on the target IP address, and click on Properties.

2.3.1.12 Site Master Settings

Set up the Site Master to generate a Technical Alarm, if any of the failover servers are down. For more information on this, please refer to the **Technical Alarms** section of **Configure Servers**, which is dealt with in **Section 4.12 Technical Alarms**.



3 System Restore after Failover

Note: it is vitally important that system restore points are correctly managed for each and every site recording server for the effective configuration restore of failed recording servers. Offsite backup of restore files is strongly recommended. The Configuration Backup settings are found on the Site→Setup→Configure servers→Server (Master). After clicking on the master server, click on the Configuration Backup tab. Database settings are not automatically backed up and restored, and will need to be manually reconfigured.

3.1 Restoring a Site Master Recording Server

If a full repair of the Site Master Server was required, then after reloading all the original software, do a system restore from the server itself to the most recent restore point. If the motherboard of the server required replacement, then new licenses will need to be issued from support@cat.co.za linked to the new MAC address of the master server. The databases will need to be reconfigured from the Site Setup menu. Once the repaired Site Master Recording Server is running, and reconnected with its original IP address, the failover server will stop failing over the old site master server and dump the recordings made during the failover process onto the new site master. The failover server will revert back to monitoring all the servers on the site.

Note:

- Ensure that the new unit's IP address is the same as the previous master unit.
- Install the correct software version (new installation, without config).
- Apply a restore point from the old site master.
- License the new unit, contact support.
- At this point, the site should be back online and the hot spare should no longer be failing over the old master unit.
- Create new databases.
- Select a database to insert failover recordings into.
- Ensure that all events and recordings point to the new database.

3.2 Restoring a Site Slave Recording Server

If a full repair of a Site Slave Server was required, then after reloading all the original software, do a system restore from the slave server itself to the most recent restore point. The databases will need to be manually reconfigured from the Site Setup menu on the slave server.

On the site master server under **SETUP=>SERVERS**, right-click on the old slave server and select "Replace Server" which will insert the new slave server into the site as the failed server replacement. Once the new slave server is registered and running, the failover server will relinquish control and dump the recordings from the failover operation onto the new slave server. The failover server will revert back to monitoring all the servers on the site.

Note:

- Ensure that the new slave unit has appropriate IP settings for the network.
- Ensure the correct software version installed, and no previous configuration.
- Apply a restore point from the original slave unit onto the replacement unit.
- The Failover server needs to be taken offline before the slave unit can be replaced.
- Bring the failover back online after the unit has been replaced.



- The Slave unit will need to be re-licensed; clients will have to contact support. Licensing →Advanced→Repair this unit's license.
- Create new databases.
- Recordings need to be edited to point to the new DATABASE.



Setup Tab: Adjacent Camera Mapping

1	Intr	oduction	.215
2	Setu	up	.216
ź	2.1	Interface	.216
ź	2.2	Map Cameras	.217
2	2.3	Page Manager	.219



1 Introduction

The adjacent cameras feature allows the spatial relationship between cameras on a site to be defined and used as a means of swiftly navigating between cameras based on a camera's physical position.

Consider an example in which a site operator observes a suspicious person wandering around the rooms in an office building. If the operator wants to follow the person on the camera monitors, they will be able to click on red arrows in the live (or review) camera view, which will then move to cameras physically related (North/South/East/West etc.) to the current camera.



Resources	
🗄 Adjacent cameras	
● PTZ	
🚳 Contacts	
Resources	

Operators can change the way that adjacent cameras are displayed in the resources panel by selecting the Adjacent cameras option from the drop-down resources list.

If selected, adjacent cameras will be displayed with live/review thumbnails, which the operator can then select to navigate to.



2 Setup

Click on the **Adjacent camera mapping** icon in the left panel of the Setup tab. The screen below will be presented.

2.1 Interface

🔁 🗋 🔒			Hold shift, left dick and drag to link cameras together	
Camera pages Camera pages rows row south Columns		× III		
row north		\$ 3		

	Area	Description				
1	Page Manager	Check Show page manager zone, crester folders and pages into which adjacent cameras can be grouped. Add a new folder Add a new page Delete selected page				
2	Resource List	All camera resources which have been added to the system are available for mapping here.				
3	Camera Mapping Area	Highlight desired cameras and click the arrow to add them to this area to be mapped.				

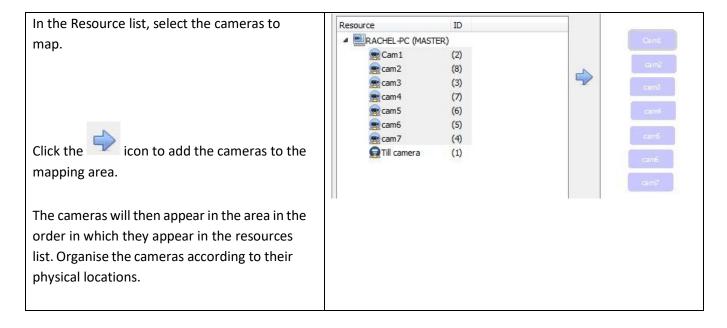


Fit	Clicking this will scale the mapped cameras to fit in the screen.	
	Apply all changes made.	
Apply	Undo all changes. Click this before applying changes in order for them	
Undo	to take effect.	

2.2 Map Cameras

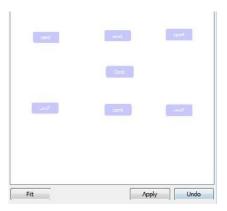
In order to map the adjacent cameras, **add the cameras** to the blank area, **link the cameras** and then **edit the camera relationships**.

2.2.1 Add Cameras



2.2.2 Organise Cameras

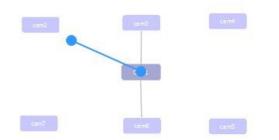
To organise the cameras, simply click on the camera name and drag it to the desired position. See below for an example:



2.2.3 Link Cameras

Next, link the adjacent cameras. To do so, click on the first camera while holding shift, and then drag to the second camera.





A blue line appears when linking cameras.

Cameras that have already been linked are connected by a grey line.

The directional relationships between linked cameras need to be configured. Right-click on the camera and select **Properties**.

2.2.4 <u>Camera Right-Click Options</u>

Right-clicking on a camera will offer the following options:

Remove camera and links Remove from page Properties **Remove camera and links** will delete the selected camera and all its links (but not linked cameras).

Remove from page will simply remove the selected camera from the page but will not delete it from the map.

Properties will open the Edit camera relationships window. See below



2.2.4.1 Properties: Edit Camera Relationships

In order to get the shortcut navigation arrows on the camera view, configure the directional relationship between each linked camera.

	The linked cameras are displayed in the Camera column.
Links for camera 'Axis P1365 - Driveway' Camera Direction	From the drop-down menu, select the direction of the relationship between cameras.
Back parking - Vivotek Down Front PTZ - Truvision Left	
OK Cancel	
Once finished, click Apply to save o	or Undo to reset.

2.2.5 Variable Zoom Control

Click **control-mouse wheel scroll** for variable zoom control.

For more extensive camera organisation, see the next section on the **Page Manager**.

2.3 Page Manager

In the Page Manager, it is possible to organise linked cameras into groups, which are user-defined. Check

Show page manager to display the Page Manager panel.

The default page is **All**, in which all cameras are grouped by the system. Selecting this page will display all cameras and their links in the mapping area.

Camera pages	
🔚 All	

2.3.1 Organise Cameras into Folders/Pages

One may extensively organise cameras into pages, which can then be grouped in folders and sub-folders.

2.3.1.1 Edit Pages and Folders





2.3.1.2 Add Cameras to Pages

Cameras must be added to a page which is then added to a folder. Select the newly created page and then, in

the Resources list, select the desired cameras and click the **select** icon to add them to the blank mapping area.

If links and relationships are already configured, they will be retained here.

Lastly, cameras must be spatially organised in order to reflect their directional relationships. As before, click and drag the cameras to the desired positions.



CathexisVision GUI Setup

1	Intro	duction	. 223
	1.1	Supported Languages	. 223
	1.2	Minimising the GUI	. 223
2	Com	mand Line Options	. 224
	2.1	Connect Client to Alarm Gateway	. 224
	2.2	Set Number of Monitors	.224
	2.3	Set Max Number of Reviewable Cameras	. 225
	2.4	Add Multiple CathexisVision GUIs	. 225
	2.5	View Legacy Archive Viewer	. 225
3	Senc	I Text Message when Alarms are Received	. 226
	3.1	Supported Platforms	. 226
	3.2	Settings Files Location	. 226
	3.3	Configure Notifying Alarms	. 226
	3.4	Configure Text Message Device	. 229
4	Men	u Bar	. 231
	4.1	File Menu	. 231
	4.2	Edit Menu	. 231
	4.3	View Menu	. 232
	4.4	Site Menu	. 232
	4.5	Video Wall Menu	. 235
	4.6	Tools Menu	. 238
	4.7	Settings Menu	. 238
	4.8	Help	. 245
5	State	Js Bar	. 246
6	Mon	itors Tab	. 247
	6.1	Open a Site on a Screen	. 247
	6.2	Sequence	. 248
	6.3	Sequence Manager	. 248
	6.4	Sequence Editor	. 248
	6.5	Salvo	. 249
	6.6	Virtual Cameras interface	250
	6.7	Individual Panel Settings	. 250



7	Can	neras Tab	<u>)</u>
7.	1	Statistics and Information	<u>)</u>



1 Introduction

This section deals with performing setups within the CathexisVision graphical user interface, as well as some other special setups which affect the way the system and/or GUI function.

If information is not available in this document, it may be information that relates to the operation of the **CathexisVision** GUI, this information is in the **Operators Manual**.

1.1 Supported Languages

The CathexisVision GUI supports the following languages:

- Arabic.
- Dutch.
- English.
- French.
- Hungarian.
- Italian.
- Portuguese.
- Spanish.

To change the language of the GUI, follow **Settings Menu** \rightarrow **General** \rightarrow **Language**, and consult the <u>General</u> <u>Settings</u> section for more a more detailed description of this menu.

1.2 Minimising the GUI

It is not recommended to minimise the CathexisVision GUI in Windows. If the application is minimised, and an event occurs, a notification will popup only if there is no other active application running. The taskbar will flash indicating there is a message in CathexisVision, but the popup will not appear on top of other open applications.

This is because Microsoft Windows does not allow applications to interrupt the user's current task. If the flashing taskbar is not sufficient, a Windows registry entry (**HKCU\Control**

Panel\Desktop\ForegroundLockTimeout) can be changed in order to get the window to become active if an event notification occurs.



2 Command Line Options

There are a number of options in **CathexisVision**, which need to be enabled/started via additional command line options. These can be added to the target paths of the shortcuts used to open the **CathexisVision** GUI.

To edit the shortcut, do the following:



 Right-click on the CathexisVision icon, and click on Properties in the context menu.

 In the Shortcut options tab that is opened, see the following entry:

 Target:
 i\Cathexis catVision Suite NVR\nvr_gui_res.exe"

Add the extra commands after the **inverted commaat** the end of the shortcut. Remember to leave a space between commands added to the target.

<u>Note</u>: Add multiple options to the end of the target by leaving a space between each option.

2.1 Connect Client to Alarm Gateway

Connecting to the alarm gateway can be done by following **Settings Menu** \rightarrow **General** \rightarrow **Connect to alarm gateway**. See the Menu Bar section under GUI Setup for more information. Enabling the gateway using this method will override settings configured in CathexisVision.

To review a **CathexisVision** Alarm Management Gateway, add the following:

gw xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

The "x's" here represent the IP address of the gateway unit to connect to. As an example, it would look something like this:

Target: n Suite NVR\nvr_gui_res.exe" gw 192.168.42.43

2.2 Set Number of Monitors

The default number of simultaneously reviewable cameras in **CathexisVision** is 6. For the most part this is sufficient, but to increase this limit, do so by entering the following into the target:

forms x

Here "x" represents the number of monitors **CathexisVision** will occupy when it starts up.

<u>Please note</u>: This option will override the settings configured in the CathexisVision software under **Settings** \rightarrow **General** \rightarrow **Number of forms**.



2.3 Set Max Number of Reviewable Cameras

The default number of simultaneously reviewable cameras in **CathexisVision** is 8. For the most part, this is sufficient. But to increase this limit, do so by entering the following into the target:

max_reviews x.

Here "x" represents the number of cameras to set as the maximum review amount.

Note:

- 1. This is for reviewing recorded footage, not the viewing of live cameras.
- 2. The default number is a conservative amount, and is set to prevent **CathexisVision** from consuming too much of the systems RAM to function.

2.4 Add Multiple CathexisVision GUIs

Add the following to the target path to have multiple **CathexisVision** GUIs open simultaneously:

user1, user2, userX

2.5 View Legacy Archive Viewer

By default, the legacy archive viewer will not be present from 2016 onwards. In order to see it in the GUI, the user will have to add the following command line argument:

legacy_archive_viewer



3 Send Text Message when Alarms are Received

The system may be configured to send a text message (SMS) when it receives an alarm. This would typically be applied to a system running as a gateway, which receives alarms for a site. However, an NVR could also be configured as a local base-station which receives site alarms (see Configure Servers for information on base-stations). The system sends text messages using a modem, or similar SMS device.

Configuration of the system to send text messages upon receipt of alarms is done by editing certain settings files in the CathexisVision installation folder. This section describes the processes of editing these settings files to configure the system to send text messages.

3.1 Supported Platforms

3.1.1 <u>Supported Platforms</u> Windows and Linux.

3.1.2 Supported Software

CathexisVision 2014.4 and later.

3.1.3 <u>Supported Modems</u>

For supported/tested modems, consult this page: https://integrations.cathexisvideo.com/supported-integrations/modem/

3.2 Settings Files Location

Unless a different installation folder was selected during the install process, the default path is:

C:\Program Files\CathexisVision Server

Currently, only the GSM modem (connected to a serial port) is supported.

3.3 Configure Notifying Alarms

The settings file must be edited in order to configure which alarms will generate SMS notifications, and to whom they will be sent. Changes made to the settings file will reflect immediately. The CathexisVision software does not need to be restarted for these changes to take effect.

Please rename the file below in order for it to become active in the CathexisVision software. See instruction below.

Required File		
	alarm_rx_sms.txt.exa	
	mple	
	This file needs to be renamed in order to become active in	
	CathexisVision. Rename it as below.	



Rename:	alarm_rx_sms.txt		
Default Location		C:\Program Files\CathexisVision Server\settings	
Structure	# comment		
Structure	recipient xxxx		
	[alarm type]		
	[alarm type]		
	[alarm type]		
	# comment		
	recipient yyyy		
	[alarm type]		
	[alarm type]		
File Configuration Guid			
# comment		particular alarm configuration in the settings	
		on of the recipient. Any text following the	
		read as comment in the file and will not be	
	included in the SMS notifica		
Recipient xxxx		phone number to which SMS notifications	
	should be sent.		
		Multiple recipients receiving the same or separate alarms may be	
	added. See 3.3.1.3 Example 3 , below.		
[alarm type]		he parameters required to cause an SMS to	
	be sent. Multiple paramete	be sent. Multiple parameters may be set. Options are:	
	tech	Enter this to specify that technical alarms	
		will send SMS notifications.	
	event low/medium/high	Enter [event low/event medium/event	
		high] (either one, all, or a combination) to	
		specify that event alarms with	
		corresponding priority levels will send	
		SMS notifications.	
		Note: Event priority levels are set up	
		when configuring events. See the Events	
		section of this manual.	
	event all	Enter [event all] to specify that all event	
		alarms (regardless of whether a priority	
		level has been configured) will send	
		notifications.	
	pattern abc	Enter [pattern abc], where [abc] is the	
		event description. This is used to further	
		refine which alarms will send	
		notifications.	



	Note:
	 Event descriptions are setup when configuring events. See the Events section of this manual.
	 The pattern uses regular expression to match the pattern to the event description.
	 Regular expressions are case sensitive. Ensure the pattern case matches that of the event description.

3.3.1 <u>Example</u>

Below are examples of possible file configurations.

3.3.1.1 Example 1: Specified Alarms

Structure	Description
recipient 062123456	The specified recipient will receive SMS notifications
tech	for all technical alarms.
recipient 064987654	The specified recipient will receive SMS notifications
event low	for all events marked as 'low priority' and 'high
event high	priority' in CathexisVision.

3.3.1.2 Example 2: Alarm Description Pattern

Structure	Description
recipient 0837654321	The specified recipient/s will receive SMS
tech	notifications for all event and technical alarms, but
event all	only if the alarm description/s start with "beware."
pattern beware	

3.3.1.3 Example 3: Multiple Recipients

Multiple recipients can be entered into the settings file. Recipients (and alarm parameters) must be listed individually in the file, even for multiple recipients receiving the same alarms:

Structure	Description
recipient 0837654321	In this example, many recipients are listed. The first
tech	three recipients will all receive SMS notifications for
event all	the same alarms, while the fourth and fifth will
pattern beware	receive an SMS notification for a different alarm.



recipient 08664537865	
tech	
event all	
pattern beware	
recipient 0728078654	
tech	
event all	
pattern beware	
recipient 0843928080	
event medium	
recipient 0617654387	
event high	

3.3.1.4 Example 4: Comment

Structure	Description
# Daryl Smith – Line Manager	The text following the hash (#) symbol is a comment
recipient 0837654321	in the file (and not included in the SMS). In this
tech example, the recipient will receive an SMS	
event all	notification for all technical alarms and all events.
	The comment in the file indicates the recipient's
	name and position in the company, and is useful for
	internal reference.

3.4 Configure Text Message Device

The text messaging (SMS) device needs to be configured to send text messages. This is done by editing the settings file. Changes made to the settings file will reflect immediately. The CathexisVision software does not need to be restarted for these changes to take effect.

Required File	sms_device.txt.example				
	This file needs to be renamed in order to become active in CathexisVision.				
	Rename it as below.				
Rename:	Rename: <u>sms_device.txt</u>				
	(Remove the 'example' from the original file name.)				
Default	C:\Program Files\CathexisVision Server\settings				
Location					
Structure					



	<pre># Format for specifying a modem: # MODEM COMM BAUD DATA PARITY STOP FLOW_CONTROL # PARITY=(N)one/ (O)dd / (E)ven # FLOW_CONTROL= (H)ardware / (S)oftware / (N)one # eg MODEM 1 115200 8 N 1 H = COMM 1 at 115200 baud 8N1 with hardware flow control MODEM 1 115200 8 N 1 H </pre>					
Description	 This settings file should indicate the Modem Comm, Baud, Data, Parity, Stop bit, and Flow Control for the relevant modem. Once the file is edited with the appropriate details, the file should only contain a single line indicating these settings. Taking the example above, delete everything in the file except for the last line: [MODEM 1 115200 8 N 1 H] Edit this line with the relevant modem details. See below for a breakdown. 					
	Modem COMM number Data Stop MODEM 1 115200 8 N 1 H Baud Parity					



4 Menu Bar

File Edit View Site Video wall Tools Settings Help

This will detail the different options available to the user through the menu bar of the **CathexisVision** GUI.

4.1 File Menu

1	Open site	•
4	Enterprise manager	
8	Archive viewer	
⊘	Security system	•
\odot	Quit	

4.1.1 <u>Open Site</u>

The menu attached to this tag will be a list of the Sites that have been added to this unit.

4.1.2 Enterprise Manager

The enterprise manager is where all Site management occurs. Add/edit/remove sites, as well as create site folders.

The assignation of Resource Sites occurs in the Enterprise Manager as well.

4.1.3 Archive Viewer

This will open up the Archive Tab. Any archived video can be viewed here.

4.1.4 Open Site List

The names under Archive Viewer and above Quit represent the Sites that currently have connection tabs open in the GUI.

4.2 Edit Menu

The edit menu, in general only displays the Show Clipboard, Clear Clipboard options. When the Enterprise Manager is open, there will be a range of different options.

4.2.1 General Edit Menu

Show Clipboard Clear Clipboard The only information contained on the clipboard in question will be when a screen grab is captured from one of the cameras in the Cameras Tab.



4.2.2 Enterprise Manager Edit Menu

6 6	New site Edit site	New/Edit/Delete Site will add a new Site; edit an existing Site, or delete an existing Site.
6 6	Delete site New connection	New Connection will add a unit connection to the selected Site.
<u>6</u>	Fetch site ID Make resources site Clear resources site	Fetch Site ID gives a created site an ID, which is essential for a site to run. Perform this after creating the site, and adding unit connections to it.
0	New folder Highlight level	Make Resources Site will make a site a Resources Site for this unit. This allows the unit to display a Video Wall, Alarm Management Gateway, and Maps Tab for this site.
	Show Clipboard Clear Clipboard	New Folder. Organise Sites in the Site List into folders.

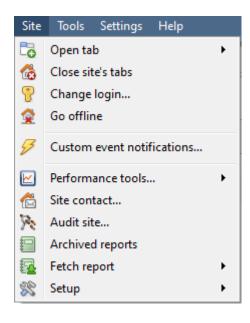
Highlight Level will highlight all Sites where X level is authorised.

4.3 View Menu

The only option available here is the option to change the GUI view to Full-screen.

4.4 Site Menu

The site menu will relate to the site whose tab is currently being viewed. To open a new Site, follow File-> Open Site → Site Name. Get this same menu, from a list of all currently open sites under the File Menu.



Open Tab will open any available tabs (Cameras, Database, Map). Close Sites Tabs will close all open tabs for this Site. Change Login will change the user who is logged in. Go Offline will terminate the connection to the Site. Custom Event Notifications below. Performance tools Please see the Appendix to this document. Site contact will show the name and details of the Contact person for the site. Audit Site below. Archived Reports will display a list of previously archived reports. Fetch Report below. Setup below.



4.4.1 <u>Custom Event Notifications</u>

<u>Note</u>: This is the main setup section for the Event Notifications feature.

Event Notifications are GUI based notifications, which will appear to an operator when there is a Cameras Tab open. There are three types of notifications.

Audio Notification	A sound clip that gets played when the event triggers.					
Message Notification	A message that gets displayed in the notification area of the resource panel. It's meant as an unobtrusive feed of events (click the size icon at the bottom of the resource panel and the notification area will get shown. This can be resized). If an event has camera resources associated with it, then the notification can be double-clicked and the cameras will be shown in the camera view.					
Popup Notification	A popup message box that is shown when the event triggers.					

4.4.1.1 Event Notification Setup

There are 4 levels at which these notifications can be configured (one global, and three tiers of Site based settings).

Global Level (all events for all	The notifications can be configured per event priority. This is done in Settings Menu \rightarrow Default Event Notifications.
sites)	
Site Level	The event notifications can be overridden for a particular site. Site menu \rightarrow Custom Event Notifications \rightarrow Site Tab. Then click on Use custom settings.
Server Level	The event notifications can be specified for a particular server on the site. Site \rightarrow
	Custom Event Notifications → Servers Tab. Then click on Use custom settings .
Event Level	The event notifications can be specified for a particular event. Site Menu → Custom Event Notifications → Events Tab. Then click on Use custom settings.

<u>Note</u>: These settings reside on the viewing station. So, each viewing station can be configured as each operator wants it to be. For instance, operator A may want the system to respond in one way to certain events, while operator B might opt for alternative options on a different viewing system.

4.4.2 Audit Site

Audit trails are the historical "footprints" left by various processes. They are used primarily as diagnostic tools to identify exactly what happened in the system. Each audit trail is in the form of a textual list of historical actions.

Filter on time in the Month to date
Filter on user chrisw
Filter on resources - select resources -
Filter on actions <u>- select actions -</u>
Show <u>first</u> 1000 🚔 results
Show Time, Action, User

005-20200528-250

There are multiple options for filtering the audits, as there can be an overwhelming amount of information in the audit logs. All the hyperlinks open up a full list of options to filter.

Filter Time, Users, Resources, and Actions.



The **Show first/last** option limits how many of the results are brought up.

Show time/action/user option allows adding/removing columns to the audit report, and will list the selected variables.

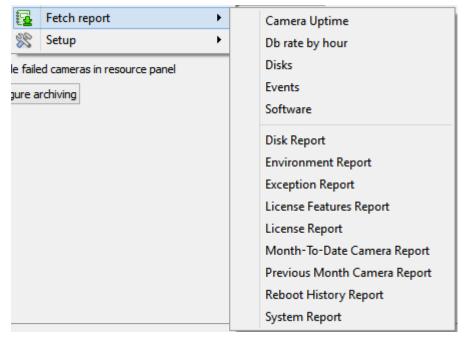
4.4.3 Print, Save, Refresh

The report is not live, so to update the information, click on Refresh.

To print the Report for reference, click on the printer icon.

To save a digital copy of the Report, click on the disk icon.

4.4.4 <u>Fetch Report</u>



This menu allows the user to pull a full report for the entire Site.

Select to pull a **Template**, or pull up a quick report based on the list of variables below the border line.

<u>Note</u>: For individual unit reports, and a full description on the nature and details of reports, see the **Setup Guide** → **Configure Servers** → **Setup Tab: Reports** section of the manual.

4.4.5 <u>Setup</u>

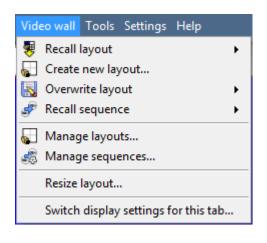
When selecting **Site** \rightarrow **Setup**, the menu shown in the image opens up.

6	Open setup tab		Open Setup Tab This will open the main Setup Tab for the Site.
-	-		Contacts Here, add and edit Site Contacts.
	Contacts		Integration Database A metadatabase (used for integrations), may be
2	Integration database		added or edited here. ⁵
₫	Procedures	•	Procedures is a procedure for an operator to follow in a particular event,
			this may include up to 6 contact people, and written instructions.

 ⁵ The documentation for this is currently in the Integration Section of Configure servers.
 005-20200528-250
 28 May 2020



4.5 Video Wall Menu



In pre-**CathexisVision** 2014 software, this menu was titled the Layout Menu, and only contained setup information for Layouts.

A **Layout** defines how the cameras appear on the screen, in the Cameras Tab. Including which cameras are shown, and how much space they take up on the screen.

A **Sequence** is a cycle of individual cameras that will run, on a timer, in a single viewing panel, in the Cameras Tab.

The **Switch Display Settings for this tab** will define the behaviour of the currently open Cameras Tab, when video information is sent to the Client Station with an alarm.

Note: this menu option will only be present when viewing a <u>Cameras Tab</u>.

4.5.1 Layout

A **Layout** defines how the cameras appear on the screen, in the Cameras Tab. Including which cameras are shown, and how much space they take up on the screen.

4.5.2 Create new Layout

To create a layout, organise cameras on the screen as desired (double-left-click to expand; single-right-click to reduce). Then click on Layouts—>New. Give the Layout a name, and click OK. (use Layouts created in the Cameras Tab in the Monitors Tab, and Vice Versa.)

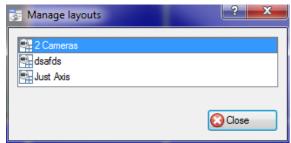
4.5.3 <u>Recall a Layout</u>

To bring up a list of existing Layouts, click on Recall and select the layout name desired.

4.5.4 Overwrite Layout

Clicking on Solution of the Layouts in the list, will overwrite that Layout with the current panel organisation.

4.5.5 <u>Manage Layouts</u>



Clicking on Manage will bring up the list of existing Layouts to manage.

From the management list, either delete the Layout or enter the Layout Properties window.

These are both done by right-clicking on the Layout in the list.



🚡 Properties		? ×
Name plew		
User ID		
Access rights —		
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

In the **Layout Properties** window, it is possible to change the Name, and User ID of the Layout, as well as the User Access Level required to view, or edit, the layout.

<u>Note</u>: with limited access rights, these settings can't be changed.

4.5.6 <u>Resize Layout</u>

🛃 Layout size	? ×
Width	4
Height	4
ОК	Cancel

Clicking on Resize layout... will provide the ability to change how many cameras are arranged on the screen. Define how many cameras there are per row, and per column.

The maximum number of cameras allowed per screen will be an 8*8 matrix. This provides a Layout with 64 cameras. (This would require an incredibly large screen to be practical though.)

4.5.7 <u>Sequence</u>

A **Sequence** is a cycle of individual cameras that will run, on a timer, in a single viewing panel.

4.5.8 <u>Sequence Manager</u>

🛃 Salvo Manager	?	×
👷 2 cameras and Just Axis		
	0	
New Delete Edit	OK	

Clicking on the icon will bring up the Sequence Manager.

To **edit** a Sequence, select the existing Sequence and click Edit. To create a **new** Sequence, click on New. This will bring up the **Sequence Editor**.

4.5.9 <u>Sequence Editor</u>

Access the Sequence Editor, to create and edit sequences, via the Sequence Manager.

😸 Sequence Edi	tor	ten temp nu	? ×
Name			Should loop
ASF axis Doorway dsf	Camera	Duration	Dome command
			OK Cancel

Name the Sequence appropriately.

The left-hand panel will hold a list of available cameras.

The right-hand panel will hold a list of cameras that are included in the Sequence.

Sequence Editor Procedures	
Add a camera to a Sequence	-Double-click on a camera in the list of available cameras.
Add a camera to a Sequence	-Double-click on a camera in the list of available cameras.



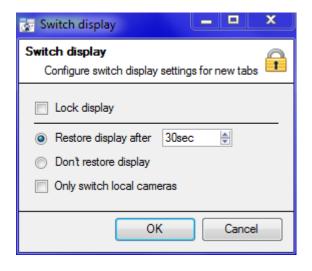
	-Or click-drag one, or multiple cameras, across into the Sequence list.	
Remove a camera	Right-click on the camera and select Delete.	
Set the duration of a camera	-Right-click, and select Set Duration.	
for each loop of the	-Enter the duration in seconds, and click OK.	
Sequence		
Looping If the Sequence will run indefin		
	it is unchecked the Sequence will run once.	
Change the order	Select a camera and use the 🖾 arrows to move that camera up or down the order.	

4.5.10 <u>Recall Sequence</u>

To recall an existing sequence, click on sequence to bring up a list of all existing sequences. Click on the sequence to run.

4.5.11 Switch Display Settings For this Tab

<u>Note</u>: The Switch Display Settings set here are for the currently open tab only. To define the default Switch Display Settings for all tabs that are opened, navigate to **Settings Menu** —> **Switch Display settings for new tabs...**



Lock Display

Will prevent the Cameras Tab from displaying any video feeds sent to it by the Event.

Restore display after

Will define how long after switching to the Event Cameras the Cameras Tab will return to the original display settings.

Don't restore display

Will leave the Cameras Tab on the Event Cameras until an operator, or administrator, resets the display.

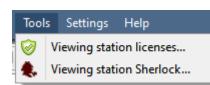
Only Switch Local Cameras

Will only switch to Event cameras originating from a local site.

<u>Note</u>: Lock , or unlock , the currently opened Cameras Tab by clicking on the little lock located at the bottom of the resource panel in the camera tab (Only appears when mouse hovers over it.)



4.6 Tools Menu



If on a client PC, it will say **Viewing Station licenses**. If on the server, it will say "**Local server licenses**". Also retrieve the server licenses from site, or units, by entering the **Setup** \rightarrow **Configure Servers** \rightarrow and right-clicking on the unit.

4.6.1 <u>Licenses</u>

This will allow adding a license to the Base Station being worked on, not to any of the Recording Servers on the Site.

4.6.2 <u>Sherlocks</u>



Sherlock files are a diagnostic tool, used by the Support Desk. The normal procedure is to email the Sherlock file to the Support Desk, with a description of the problem, but it can also be saved to disk.

<u>Note</u>: clicking on Email to Recipients, will open up the Operating Systems default email client. Save to Disk will allow saving the Sherlock files to any storage attached to a workstation.

4.7 Settings Menu



This section deals with the General Settings Menu.



4.7.1 <u>General</u>

4.7.1.1 Standard Tab

💿 General S	etup			?	\times
Standard	Advanced				
Language		System	\sim		
Relay double	e-click action	Toggle	\sim		
Alarm switch	n display	Switch event cameras	\sim		
Number of f	orms	1	\sim		
Prompt v	when quitting				
Persister	nt clipboard				
Clipboar	d path C:/Pr	r/CathexisVision Serv	er/d	ipboard	
Connect to alarm gateway (2) Alarm gateway IP 127.0 .0 .1					
		OK		Can	cel

Language: Select the language of the GUI from the drop-down menu.

Relay Double Click Action will set whether or not a relay in the Resources Panel, will be changed from its current state, or set to pulse.

Alarm Switch Display defines the GUI behaviour for when a user is handling an Event Alarm. It defines whether or not the display will switch to show the cameras attached to that Alarm.

Number of Forms

Select the default number of monitors to be displayed. The default maximum is 6, but this option can be overridden by editing the command line. See the Command Line Options section.

Prompt When Quitting will prompt the user every time CathexisVision is quit, regarding whether or not the current tabs should be reopened when the program is next started.

Persistent clipboard will persist after closing CathexisVision.

Connect to alarm gateway: Check to enable connection to the alarm gateway. Enter the gateway unit's IP address. Click the **?** icon to display license information. These settings can also be configured by editing the command line. See the Setup Manual.



4.7.1.2 Advanced Tab

General Setup	?	×
Standard Advanced		
Enable automatic high DPI scaling (Restart required)		
Use software OpenGL (Restart required)		
ОК	Can	cel

This tab deals with slightly more advanced settings for the GUI.

Check to enable automatic high DPI scaling of the GUI.

Check to enable use of OpenGL software.

Note: Restart required for both settings.



4.7.2 Video Display

Consul sattings			
General settings			
Maintain aspect ratio			
✓ Deinterlace			
Show time			
Show recording			
Show review button overla	у		
Old style mouse handling			
No border between video s	creens		
Dynamic stream selection			
Use OpenGL			
Live video resolution based on	pixel size	•	
Source pixel aspect ratio	1.00	Sel	lect video system
Resource panel location	Right	•	
Live time format	Time	-	
Maximum live streams	Unlimited	*	
OpenGL settings			
🗹 Use pixel shaders (if availat	ole)		
Optimize fonts for speed 🔻			
Non-OpenGL settings			
Fastest scaling			
		OK	Cancel

OpenGL: A Graphics library...a cross-platform API for writing applications for 2D and 3D graphics. The graphics card utilises the OpenGL, and thus the load will be passed on to the GPU, freeing the load on the CPU.

Pixel shaders: Similar to OpenGL.

Fastest scaling: When the CPU has to be utilised to handle the load, this option helps optimise the instructions for the CPU.

Maintain aspect ratio: The ratio between the width and the length will be kept constant as the video size changes.

Deinterlacing: A process of converting interlaced video (like analogue) to a non-interlaced form.

Show time: Shows the time on the video. **Show recording:** indicates when, with a red dot, the video feed in a panel is currently being recorded.

Show review button overlay: will overlay buttons for review, on mouse-over, on a camera panel when it's video feed is being reviewed.

Old style mouse handling: Use pre-2017.2 mouse handling.

No border between video screens: Check to remove borders between video screens. Dynamic stream selection is enabled by default. This will dynamically select the stream based on the display resolution. Use OpenGL: Check to use. See below for info.

Live video resolution:: Based on either panel size or pixel size.

Source pixel aspect ratio:: Will conform the video source's correct aspect ratio, making the object look more real-world. For example, when a video of a perfect circle appears oval on the screen, it is an indication that the aspect ratio might be different from the original source.

Resource Panel Location: Resource Panel can be configured for left or right of video screen.

Live Time Format: Select from drop-down menu whether to display only time or date and time in live video.

Maximum Live Streams: An option to limit the number of live video streams in the CathexisVision camera tab. The limit is a global limit and applies across all screens. (On an NVR/DVR this setting is only accessible to an administrator.)



4.7.3 <u>Switch Display Settings for New Tabs</u>

This will define how the cameras tab responds when there is an event on the site that sends video and information to the Cameras Tab of the viewing client.

Note: The settings here will apply to any new Cameras Tabs, opened after settings are changed.

🛃 Switch display		
Switch display Configure switch display settings for new tabs		
Lock display		
 Restore display after Don't restore display 		
Only switch local cameras		
OK Cancel		

Lock Display

Will prevent the Cameras Tab from displaying any video feeds sent to it by the Event.

Restore display after

Will define how long after switching to the Event Cameras the Cameras Tab will return to the original display settings.

Don't restore display

Will leave the Cameras Tab on the Event Cameras until an operator, or administrator, resets the display.

Only Switch Local Cameras

Will only switch to Event cameras originating from a local site.

Note: Lock , or unlock , the currently opened Cameras Tab by clicking on the little lock located at the end of the Timeline on the Review Controls.

4.7.4 Default Event Notifications

Here, set the default/global Event Notifications for this Viewing Station. For more information about Event Notifications, and their Setup, see the section entitled Custom Event Notifications (above).



4.7.5 Performance

Performance	2 ×			
Defaults				
User interface				
CPU affinity				
Streaming video				
SV 1 SV 2 SV 3				
Scale mode Scale 💌				
CPU affinity CPU 1 CPU 2 CPU 3 CPU 4				
Add Remove				
	OK Cancel			

Note: the system will calculate defaults that should be optimised already.

Unless the user has an understanding of this technology, and an explicit reason for changing these settings, don't change them.

(1)	Defaults:		
	The system calculates default performance settings based on available CPUs, enabling optimisation of resources even before settings have been manually configured. Once the performance settings are explicitly configured, the defaults fall away. However, recall the defaults by clicking the Defaults button > OK (customised settings will then be lost).		
	Default Options:		
	Safe default	When clicking on default, there is the option to choose the default that best	
	Dual core	suits the system being worked on.	
	Quad core	Choose safe default if unsure as to what system is being worked on.	
(2)	User Interface:		
What the user sees.			
	Priority:		
	The priority setting affects what the user sees as the interface. For example, the speed and		
	responsiveness of the interface is influenced by the Priority setting.		
	CPU affinity with the user interface:		
	The CPU affinity dictates which CPU core will be responsible for what streaming server. This enables		
	multiple streaming servers without exceeding the processing power of the CPU.		



(3)	Streaming video:
	Here, add or delete Streaming Video Servers (SVs) to match the available CPUs. A streaming video is
	responsible for the decompression of the compressed video from camera sources (video is compressed
	for transporting purposes).
	Scale mode:
	"Scaling" is the re-sizing of images. For example, the scaling of MPEG images from their default 4CIF
	down to QCIF display size. Scaling requires processing effort. One of the big advantages of multiple CPU
	processing is that this effort can be split across the CPUs. Each Streaming Video Server (SV) must be
	assigned a "Scale Mode" setting, which is the type of scaling to be performed by the SV.
	Options are:
	No scaling (The SV does not scale. Presumably, scaling would be assigned to another SV)
	Scaling (The SV scales. If scaling is assigned to every SV, the system will attempt to spread the load)
	Streaming Video Server (SV):
	By default, the system only has one Streaming Video (SV) server. Manually create more SVs for further
	CPUs, so that ultimately there are as many SVs as there are CPUs:
	Dual core: SV1, SV2
	Quad core: SV1, SV2, SV3, SV4
	For example, for a quad processor:
	SV 1 SV 2 SV 3
	CPU affinity with the streaming video:
	Whereas SVs are numbered SV1, SV2, etc, CPUs are numbered CPU0, CPU1, CPU2, etc
	The "CPU affinity" maps CPU to SV. For example:
	Dual core: SV1 (CPU0), SV2 (CPU1)

Quad core: SV1 (CPU0), SV2 (CPU1), SV3 (CPU2), SV4 (CPU3)

4.7.6 <u>Keyboard</u>

🛃 Keyboard Setup 🛛 🔹 🗾				
Enabled				
Туре	Cathexis KBD6000 🗨			
Port	1			
Baud	9600 💌			
Data bits	8 👻			
Parity	None 👻			
Stop bits	1 💌			
Debug logging				
OK Cancel				

This option is for adding a keyboard to a Base Station. If adding a Keyboard to a Recording Server, do so via Site—>Open Tab—>Setup— >Configure Servers—>Keyboard.

Enter in the details relevant to the keyboard.



4.7.7 <u>Alarms</u>

Enter an IP address for a technical alarm server, or gateway, for the viewing software to send alarms to.

4.8 Help

Help	Help				
Col	Local server stats				
2	Enable support user				
8	Manuals	•			
0	About				

Local server stats/Viewing station stats: Shows the statistics for the local server if it's an NVR, or for the Viewing Station. Depending on which unit one is on.

Enable Support User: This will enable/disable a special user added for support purposes, when installing **CathexisVision** NVR. **Note**: this will only appear on NVR units.

Manuals: The Setup, Operator's, Quickstart, and Archiving manuals are accessible within the software.

About: Provides information about the License, the Release version, and the email address for Support.



5 Status Bar

🔔 matt (Administrator) 🛛 🮯 CathexisVision Prem

🤣 CathexisVision Premium Supplied to TestClient by Cathexis

🏂 🚯 👒 🔜 🧭 🖂 💺

The status bar runs along the bottom of the interface. On the bottom right of the bar are a useful set of notifications. For further details, in the GUI, left-click on a specific icon.

Notification Icon	Notification Description
🚨 dvs (Administrator)	The currently logged in user , and their access level.
🤣 CathexisVision Premium	This represents the Site License .
Supplied to Documentation by Cathexis Internal	The distributor of the license.
	The cameras notification will only appear to alert the user when cameras are down. Clicking on it will allow one to see which cameras these are.
©	The licensing notification will be permanently present. Click to display information about site licenses.
	The performance monitor notification is permanently present, and allows viewing performance statistics. See the Appendix of this document for a full explanation.
₽	The connection status icon is permanently present, and indicates the status of the connection to the current site.
	Video Analytics notification. Warns the user when an error has occurred which involves one or more of the video feeds on a site.
	Failover notification will provide information about the status of existing failover servers.
	Failover data merge icon will provide details about current data merge operations.



6 Monitors Tab

The monitors tab is a tab that gives full control over the Video Wall. Here, change the layout, and define camera Sequences, and salvos.

There will not be any video playing on the interface. The names of cameras where they are placed on the layout will be visible.

Monitors	Monitors					
		cond Monitor atthew's Site	Fedora Unit Matthew's Site Doorway		Matthew's Site	•
* *	0	axis	 No camera No camera 	 No camera No camera 	L. (
	 No camera No camera 	 No camera No camera 	0	oorway		

6.1 Open a Site on a Screen

The list of monitors will be representative of the number of monitors that have been added to servers on the site.



To Open a monitor from a site, select one of the available Monitors. Then click the Sites list: Matthew's Site
Then select the site.

The Monitor with a red border will be the Monitor whose camera Layout is displayed below it.



6.1.1 <u>Layout</u>

A layout defines how the cameras appear on the screen. This includes which cameras are present and how much of the screen an individual camera takes up.

6.1.1.1 Create a Layout

To create a layout, organise cameras on the screen as desired (double-left-click to expand; single-right-click to reduce). Then click on Layouts—>New. Give the Layout a name, and click OK. (use Layouts created in the Cameras Tab in the Monitors Tab, and Vice Versa.)

6.1.1.2 Edit an Existing Layout

Setup the cameras as desired (double-left-click to expand; single-right-click to reduce). Then click **Layouts**— **>Save As**. Then select the Layout to overwrite, and click ok.

6.1.1.3 Recall a Layout

To bring up a particular layout on a screen, click on the

6.2 Sequence

A Sequence will run a set of cameras, in a single camera panel.

6.3 Sequence Manager

🛃 Salvo Manager	2	×
👷 2 cameras and Just Axis		
New Delete Edit		
New Delete Edit	OK	

Clicking on the icon will bring up the Sequence Manager. To **edit** a Sequence, select the existing Sequence and click Edit. To create a **new** Sequence, click on New. This will bring up the **Sequence Editor**.

6.4 Sequence Editor

🛃 Sequence Edit	or	a fast lating top		? X
Name]		Should loop
ASF axis Doorway dsf	Camera	Duration	Dome command	
			ОК	Cancel

Name the Sequence appropriately.

The left-hand panel will hold a list of available cameras.

The right-hand panel will hold a list of cameras that are included in the Sequence.

Sequence Editor Procedures	
Add a camera to a Sequence	-Double-click on a camera in the list of available cameras.
	-Or click-drag one, or multiple cameras, across into the Sequence list.
Remove a camera	Right-click on the camera and select Delete.

28 May 2020



icon, and select a layout name of choice.



Set the duration of a camera	-Right-click, and select Set Duration.
for each loop of the	-Enter the duration in seconds, and click OK.
Sequence	
Looping	If the 🔽 Should loop option is checked, the Sequence will run indefinitely, if
	it is unchecked the Sequence will run once.
Change the order	Select a camera and use the 🖾 arrows to move that camera up or down the order.
Run a Sequence	 Click on a camera panel. Click on Select the relevent Sequence from the drop-down menu.

6.5 Salvo

A Salvo is a set of Layouts. This means that the Layout of cameras on the monitor will change, running through a set order, using the pre-defined Layouts.

6.5.1 <u>Salvo Manager</u>

🛃 Salvo Manager	? <mark>×</mark>	Click on the 國 icon. This will bring up
🐏 2 cameras and Just Axis		the Salvo Manager. To edit a Salvo, select
New Delete	Edit Ok	the existing Salvo and click edit. To create a new Salvo click on New. This will bring up the Salvo Editor.
🛃 Salvo Editor	<u>? x</u>	Name the Salvo appropriately.
Name	Should loop	The left-hand panel will hold a list of
CameraLayoutTable Layout	Duration	available Layouts.
2 Cameras		
		The right-hand panel will hold a list of Layouts that are included in the Salvo.
Salvo Procedures		

Salvo Procedures		
Add a Layout to a Salvo	-Double-click on a Layout in the list of available Layouts.	
	-Or click-drag one, or multiple Layouts, across into the Salvo list.	
Remove a Layout	Right-click on the Layout and select Delete.	
Set the duration of a Layout	-Right-click, and select Set Duration.	
for each loop of the Salvo	-Enter the duration in seconds, and click OK.	
Looping	If the 🔽 Should loop option is checked the Salvo will run indefinitely, if it is	
	unchecked the Salvo will run once.	



Change the order	Select a Layout and use the 🖾 arrows to move that Layout up or down the order.
Run a Salvo	- Click on a Layout panel.
	- Select the relevent Salvo from the drop-down menu.

6.6 Virtual Cameras interface

	No camera	No camera	The virtual cameras interface is the interface where one can:
🗢 axis	No camera	No camera	 See the Layout that the cameras will take on the Monitor selected. See what cameras are
💿 No camera 💿 No camera	Doorway		 in which panels. Control the overlays on each camera. Use the Playback
💿 No camera 💿 No camera			controls to review video on the Monitor.

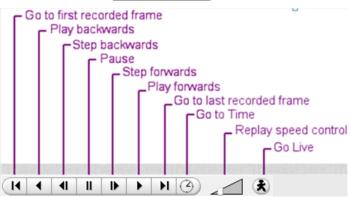
6.7 Individual Panel Settings

To change the settings of an individual panel, middle-click on the panel, this will bring up the following menu:

Set no camera	Set No Camera will make this panel blank
Review camera	This will bring up the recordings of the selected camera. For information on reviewing the camera, see the section below, on Review Controls
Next video format	This will cycle through the available video feeds that are available on the selected camera.



Review Controls



Note: When a camera has been selected its border, and camera name, will become Green:

🗢 axis	🗢 Doorway
🗢 Doorway	Doorway



7 Cameras Tab

CathexisVision offers the installer two useful tools for retrieving visual information about cameras, as they are streaming information. These steps are carried out in the Cameras Tab, viewing video.

7.1 Statistics and Information

7.1.1 <u>Resolution and Bitrate</u>



7.1.2 General Camera Information



Pressing CTRL-R will bring up the Bit Rate, and Resolution information of the feeds. This is seen in the yellow text in the image to the left.

On the top right is the **resolution** of the feed currently being viewed

On the bottom left, are two numbers. The number in brackets is the **bitrate**; to the left of this number is the **Frames Per Second Rate**.

Pressing CTRL-I brings up the general camera information overlay.

Unit is the unit this camera has been added to. Camera is the cameras name.

Index is a number given by the NVR to identify this camera.

Format this is the format the video is streaming in.

Type this is the type of device the camera is. **Contact** this is the address of the server the camera is attached to.

Stream Profile this is the streaming profile of the video feed.



CathexisVision Forensic Tool

1	Fore	ensic Tool	.254
	1.1	Introduction	.254
	1.2	Data Values Used	.255
	1.3	Date/Time Selection	.255
	1.4	Graph Window	.256
	1.5	Selected Views	.258
	1.6	Quick View	.261
	1.7	Examples of How to Interpret the Graph and Columned Values	.262

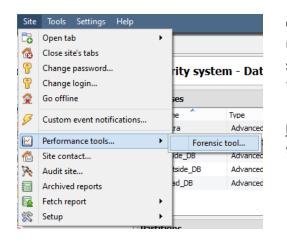


1 Forensic Tool

1.1 Introduction

The Forensic tool is used to troubleshoot and obtain historical network, storage, event, camera streaming, people counting, and other valuable data.

Note: The Forensic Tool will only be available in CathexisVision 2014.2 (Service Pack 2) and onwards.



Once a connection is made to the intended camera site or NVR unit, open the forensic tool by selecting the "Site" menu option, scrolling down to the "Performance tools", and selecting the "Forensic tool..." option.

<u>Note</u>: It is necessary to be logged in with administrative rights to access the Forensic Tool.

<u>7</u>	Forensic analysis	(Security sy	/stem)							_			• ×
¢	1 삼 <u>Summary</u>	for <u>all serve</u>	<u>vs</u>				<u>Don't so</u>	immarise	<u>Today</u> fro	m < 27	🖨 May	2014 🖨	▶ 🖉
		⊕	Ð,	€	€,	Ð,	Graph	NW in	NW out	Disk write	Encode	Decode	
	Server	NW in	NW out	Disk write	Encode	Decode		S	Immary	(15 minu	ite reso	olution)	
Ø	Security system	68.1Mbps	15.3Mbps	13.8Mbps	0P/s	15.3MP/s	100Mbps 20.0MP/s						
							50.0Mbps 10.0MP/s		2	mhir			
✓ ✓ ✓	-					(Obps OP/s		arto asto	1.1	1-	100 to 1000 to	

Figure 1 Main Forensic Window

The below sections will serve to explain the interface in Figure 1, and how to go about using this tool.



1.2 Data Values Used

NW in	
NW out	
📃 Disk write	
Encode	
Decode	
	«
	-

NW in	Network In (Mbps). This would be the video, streaming in from IP cameras.				
NW out	Network out (Mbps). Video going out. Remote viewing Client PCs.				
Disk write	sk write Disk writing speed in Mbps. The rate writing captured video stream to				
	local/network storage.				
Encode Encoded pixel rate. VOM1512/MPEG4 compression for recording,					
	Note: This is NOT the transcoded live streaming.				
Decode	Decoded pixel rate. For analytics the compressed video is decoded into raw				
	data.				

1.3 Date/Time Selection

•

There are two ways to select the graphing period:

• <u>Time Bar Selection</u> <u>Dont summarise</u> <u>6 hours</u> from (08h00) 27) May 2014 () ()

Choose a date, and time, as the starting point for the graph. Then select to fetch data <u>*6 hours*</u> from the selected date/time.

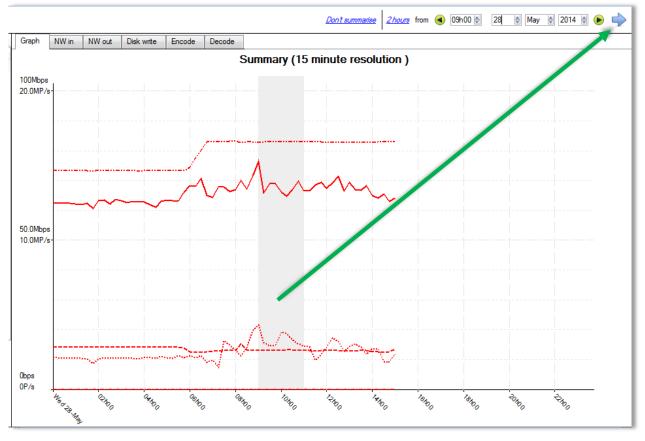
Time Frame Selection

Or select to graph the "Last 6 hours", "Last 14 days", etc. This will automatically move the date/time to the required position to reflect the selected period.

2	2 hours
1	6 hours
-	12 hours
I	24 hours
	1 day
	2 days
	3 days
	7 days
	14 days
	28 days
	Last 2 hours
	Last 6 hours

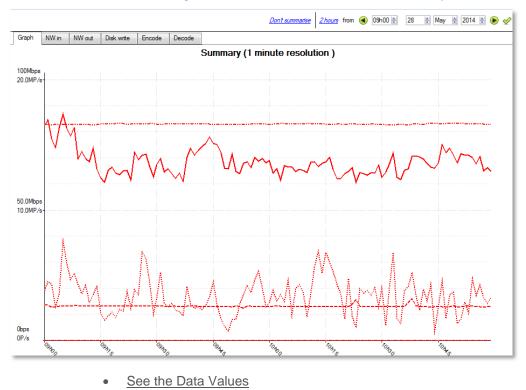


1.4 Graph Window



• Zoom in on a Period

Zoom in on a desired period by holding down the left mouse button, at the starting or ending point, and move the mouse right or left. The selected area's colour will become grey. To zoom in on the selected area, select the blue arrow (
). This will give a detailed view of the zoomed-in time period:





Get to the actual data values for the various data sets by selecting the "NW in" column as shown in the example below:

Graph NW in	NW out Disk write	Encode	Decode					
				l	NW in			
Time	Security system							
2014-06-03 00:00:00	75.9Mbps							
2014-06-03 00:15:00	75.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 00:30:00	76.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 00:45:00	74.9Mbps							
2014-06-03 01:00:00	74.9Mbps							E
2014-06-03 01:15:00	75.0Mbps							
2014-06-03 01:30:00	75.0Mbps							
2014-06-03 01:45:00	74.7Mbps							
2014-06-03 02:00:00	75.8Mbps							
2014-06-03 02:15:00	75.4Mbps							_
2014-06-03 02:30:00	74.7Mbps							
2014-06-03 02:45:00	75.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 03:00:00	73.7Mbps							
2014-06-03 03:15:00	73.1Mbps							
2014-06-03 03:30:00	75.9Mbps							
2014-06-03 03:45:00	76.1Mbps							
2014-06-03 04:00:00	75.9Mbps							
2014-06-03 04:15:00	77.4Mbps							
2014-06-03 04:30:00	75.1Mbps							
2014-06-03 04:45:00	75.2Mbps							
2014-06-03 05:00:00	75.6Mbps							
2014-06-03 05:15:00	75.6Mbps							
2014-06-03 05:30:00	74.4Mbps							
2014-06-03 05:45:00	77.2Mbps							
2014-06-03 06:00:00	81.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 06:15:00	81.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 06:30:00	78.9Mbps							
2014-06-03 06:45:00	75.4Mbps							
2014-06-03 07:00:00	68.6Mbps							
2014-06-03 07:15:00	69.5Mbps							
2014-06-03 07:30:00	74.2Mbps					 		 -
Data in columns	Show units							<u>Export</u>

• Export as a Comma Separated Values (CVS) file

xI	🔒 🐬 👌		
F	ILE HOME	INSEF	RT PAGE LAYOUT FORMUL
Pas	▶ 🔏 Cut □ 📴 Copy → ste ✓ Format Pair		Calibri \cdot 11 \cdot A \cdot B I \cup \cdot \odot \cdot Δ \cdot
	Clipboard	E.	Font 5
A 1	• •	\times	√ f _x
	А		В
1			Security system
2	2014/06/03	3 00:00	75.9Mbps
3	2014/06/03	3 00:15	75.5Mbps
4	2014/06/03	3 00:30	76.5Mbps
5	2014/06/03	3 00:45	74.9Mbps
6	2014/06/03	3 01:00	74.9Mbps
7	2014/06/03	3 01:15	75.0Mbps
8	2014/06/03	3 01:30	75.0Mbps
9	2014/06/03	3 01:45	74.7Mbps
10	2014/06/03	3 02:00	75.8Mbps

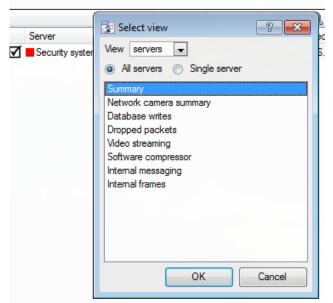
One can also export the data to a CVS file. See bottom right "Export" shortcut highlighted in yellow. Choose to disable the "Show units" option below if only needing to import the actual data into Excel. See the image for the exported CVS file opened in Excel.



1.5 Selected Views

1.5.1 <u>Summary View, of Servers</u>

A Summary for all servers A



The default view when opening the forensic tool is the "All servers" summary view:

Change this view by selecting the available options for the Servers view below, for example "Summary", "Network camera summary", etc.

As already indicated, the "Servers" view has a list of data sets, which one can choose from. The "X axis" or data sets available for the viewing options will be discussed. Select to view data for all servers, part of the site, or a single server.

1.5.2 <u>Network Camera Summary</u>

This provides the **total network throughput**, the **drop ratio**, and a count of **camera stalls** detected for all IP cameras connected to the unit/s.

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Bitrate	Mbps	Total bitrate of all IP cameras for selected unit/s.
Drop ratio	1:200000	Means 1 dropped packet for every 200000 packets received.
Stalls	Number	A stall is when cameras are not reachable for more than 5 seconds.

1.5.3 Database Writes

The recording process receives video data from the cameras. The video data gets cached to local memory (Shared memory – SHM), and from there the data gets read and written to storage. Bottlenecks could be caused by slow or faulty storage/equipment.

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Write	Mbps	Rate of writing video footage to storage.
bitrate		
Write	1:200000	Disk writing drops. 1 data item dropped for 200000 written to disk.
Drops		
SHM Drops	1:100000	Items dropped because the shared memory wrapped - the writes couldn't
		keep up with the data arriving. 1 item dropped for 100000 items written out of
		memory.

1.5.4 Dropped Packets

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Network	Number	Packets dropped on the external network (i.e. from cameras to the Recorder).
Internal	Number	Internal UDP packets dropped between servers (internal software messaging).
.Frames	Number	Video frames dropped internally, when being passed from process to process.



<u>Note</u>: For the "Number" or X axis value, 200k would indicate 200 000 packets.

1.5.5 <u>Video Streaming</u>

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Sent	Mbps	Video streaming data sent out from the unit (for live viewing).
Received	Mbps	Video streaming data received into the unit (for live viewing).
Decoded	P/s	Pixels per second decoded for live viewing.

Note: MP/s indicates 1000 000 Pixels per second.

1.5.6 <u>Software Compressor</u>

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Encoded	P/s	Encoded pixel rate. VOM1512/MPEG4 compression for recording/streaming
		Note: It is NOT the transcoded live streaming.
Decoded	P/s	Decoded pixel rate. For analytics, the compressed video is decoded into raw
		data.
Encode	%	% of frames encoded, ideally 100%. (Less means frames have been dropped).
efficiency		
Decode	%	% of frames decoded, ideally 100%.
efficiency		

<u>Note</u>: The encoding done by the HTML server is not accounted for at present.

1.5.7 Internal Messaging

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Missed	Number	How many UDP packets between processes have been dropped,
		hopefully 0.
Received	Number	How many UDP packets have been sent between processes
Logs	Number/min	How many logs have been sent to the logger per minute

Internal Frames

Internal frames passed between internal processes.

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Missed	Number	Video frames dropped.
Received	fps	Received video frames



1.5.8 Network Camera View, of Cameras

Forensic analysis (Security system)

A A Network cameras for all servers

			Ð,	Ð	Ð,	Ð
	Server	Resource	Bitrate	Drops	Stalls	Down
$\mathbf{\nabla}$	Security syst	em Hunt iDC353MEV - Kitchen	1.80Mbps	0	0	0
$\mathbf{\nabla}$	Security syst	em Dahua PTZ	1.59kbps	0	0	181
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy	🔄 Select view	? ×	0	0	0
	Security sy	View cameras 🗨		0	0	0
	Security sy	All cameras Single camera		0	0	0
	Security sy	All cameras Single camera		0	6	53
	Security sy	Network cameras		0	0	0
	Security sy	Database cameras		1	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			0	6	17
	Security sy			0	2	276
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			5	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy			0	0	0
	Security sy	ОК	Cancel	0	0	0
	Security sy			1	1	0
	C	^ /^	1051.0	0	0	0

Change the Servers view to "Network cameras" by first selecting the "Cameras" View option as shown below. This will provide camera-specific values.

The "cameras" view has a list of data sets to choose from. The "X axis", or data sets available, for the "cameras" view will be discussed. Select to display "All cameras", or a "Single camera".

1.5.9 <u>Network Cameras</u>

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Bitrate	Mbps	Total bitrate for selected cameras.
Drops	Number	The number of dropped packets, for each camera for selected time period.
Stalls	Number	When cameras are not reachable for more than 5 seconds.
Down	Number	The number of seconds the cameras have been down in a time bucket. So, if the
		bucket is 15 minutes, expect it to be around 900 if it was down for the whole
		time.

1.5.10 Database Cameras

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Bitrate	Mbps	Total bitrate of selected cameras.
Bytes to disk	Bytes	Bytes written do disk.
Down	Number	The number of seconds the selected cameras have been down in a time
		bucket. So, if the bucket is 15 minutes, expect it to be around 900 if it was
		down for the whole time.

1.5.11 Events View, of Cameras

Variable	Unit	Descriptions
Event Count	Number	Number of events per camera for the selected period.



1.6 Quick View

□ □ ○		•		om the CathexisV on. Left-click on th		ice. In
Network in 84.1 Mbps Network out 3.20 Mbps Database write	Clicking on the information about The show details i is hyperlinked. In t Following these lin network traffic.	the system. I nfo can be se the below im	Click on ^{Show deta} een in more de age, these are I	and it will beconnected by clicking on the second secon	me the imag the informat etwork out .	e below. ion that
21.0 Mbps		<u>Network in</u>	<u>Network out</u>	Database write	Encoding	Decoding
Encoding	Security system	113Mbps	2.31Mbps	28.6Mbps	0P/s	16.7MP/s
0 P/s		R	Ŀ	Ŀ	Ŀ	Ł
Decoding						Show summar
16.5 ^{MP/s}	For example, clicki	ing on Netwo	ork in reveals th	ne following:		
🙆 🥼 Show details 🙆		Network in	1			
		<u>Cameras</u>	<u>Video</u> Data			
	Security system	97.9Mbps	Obps Obps	Ŀ^•		

1.6.1 Graphing the Quick View Data.

Graph any of the information in this quick view by clicking on the relevant $\stackrel{\text{le}}{=}$ icon. Once viewing the graph, the icon will change to $\stackrel{\text{le}}{=}$.





1.6.2 Live or Historic



Once the graph window has popped up, select between viewing the live data, or historic data.

This is done by clicking on the drop-down menu, found on the bottom right of the graph window.

1.6.3 <u>Multiple Graphs</u>

View multiple graphs by disconnecting the current graph. This is done by clicking on the 🛐 icon, found at the top right of the graph window.

1.7 Examples of How to Interpret the Graph and Columned Values

1.7.1 Example 1: Investigate Disk Writing Throughput

One can choose to only display the disk writing graph. Check the "Disk write" checkbox, on the bottom lefthand corner, and deselect the rest. This allows plotting the disk writing graph, exclusively, on the right-hand side. Also select the period "Today" (highlighted in yellow) for the disk writing throughput.



By moving the mouse to the left plane, away from the graph, the columned values on the left would be the **average disk writing throughput** for the selected period. Also expand the "Disk write" column, to get the minimum and maximum values for the selected period. They are also highlighted on the graph in Figure 2 (below).

		€	Ð,	🔍 Disk wr	ite		Ð,	Ð,	Graph	NW in	NW out	Disk write	Encode	E 4
	Server	NW in	NW out	Average	Min	Max	Encode	Decode	, c	ummar	v (15 m	ninute res	colution)	
⊿	Security system	68.1Mbps	15.3Mbps	13.8Mbps	6.20Mbps	25.3Mbps	0P/s	15.3MP/s	3	ummai	y(131	intute re:	Solution	/
									50.0Mbps 25.0Mbps					
Image: A state of the state	NW in NW out Disk write ······ Encode								Obps	**************************************				

Figure 2

Note: These 2 examples illustrate the process used to filter out required information. Other system data can be retrieved in a similar fashion.

1.7.2 <u>Example 2: Investigate Network Loss Issues on Selected Cameras</u>

1.7.2.1 Scenario

The client has indicated that the live camera views on selected cameras are tearing and there are recording gaps. The camera resources on the right-hand side of the **CathexisVision** indicates low, moderate, and high packet loss. The forensic tool can help highlight the times when the packets failed, and also the magnitude.

The Forensic tool is **only one** of the possible tools with which to measure network loss. Other tools could be network switches, with port statistics; or packet analysing software: tcpdump for Linux and Wireshark for Windows - to capture and analyse RTP (RTSP) traffic loss. Refer to the "**stats**" page for network information. It will give real time packet loss statistics and more detailed video streaming parameters.

Packet loss, on selected cameras, could point to one segment of the network. For example: a segment over a wireless link. It is advisable to create a detailed network layout diagram, of the site, with all the segments and connected IP devices visible on the map. This will help isolate network issues faster. Packet loss on specific camera models could also present itself, when old camera firmware is used. Update the camera firmware to eliminate, or rule this out.



1.7.2.2 Method

1.) Change the view to "cameras", and then select "Network cameras" from the list:

🛃 Select view
View cameras 💌
All cameras
Network cameras
Database cameras
OK Cancel
UK Cancel

2.) To inspect packet loss on all the cameras for the last day, change the period selector to display "Yesterday":

<u>Don't summarise</u>	<u>Yesterday</u> from	۲	05	😫 Jun	*	2014 🌻	Þ	\checkmark
------------------------	-----------------------	---	----	-------	---	--------	---	--------------

3.) Sort the dropped packets on the left-hand column view, by clicking on the "**Drops**" column header, as indicated below in yellow:

			(Ð,	Ð,	Ð,	
	Server	Resource	Bitrate	Drops	Stalls	Down	
	Security system	Surveon - rear rubbish	10.7Mbps	60	0	0	
	Security system	Samsung SNV-7080	2.01Mbps	15	3	50	
	Security system	Ganz ZN-C2M Dining Area	864kbps	13	0	0	
	Security system	Vista VK2-1080VRD S/w	5.29Mbps	1	0	0	
	Security system	Vista VK2-2MPVRD upstairs	3.40Mbps	1	0	0	
	Security system	Sony SNC-CH120-Sales Marketin	2.77Mbps	1	0	0	
	Security system	Axis M5013 Demo Room (D Unit)	44.1kbps	0	0	0	
	Security system	SAM2101 downstairs balcony	4.62Mbps	0	0	0	Ξ
	Security system	SAM3104 Road cam up	328kbps	0	1	2918	
	Security system	Sony DH240 Stairscase	735kbps	0	0	0	
	Security system	SAM3104 Road cam gate	1.82Mbps	0	2	2694	
	Security system	JVC VN-T216VPRU CatAfrica	255kbps	0	0	0	
	Security system	Sony DH120 Upstairs B/door	1.01Mbps	0	0	0	
	Security system	Vista 540VRD CatAfrica	2.13Mbps	0	0	0	
Π	Security system	Hunt iDC353MEV - Kitchen	1.90Mbps	0	0	0	

A A Network cameras for all servers



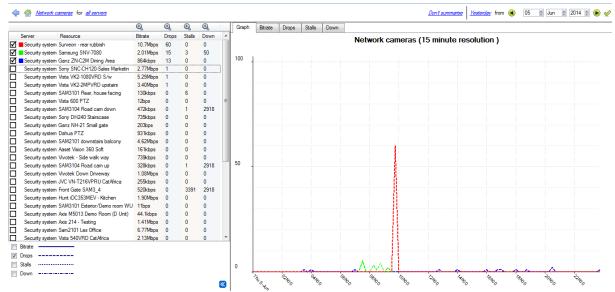
4.) In order to graph the cameras, select them on the top left-hand side. Here, the first 3 cameras are examined:

			Ð,	Ð,	Ð,	Ð,
	Server	Resource	Bitrate	Drops	Stalls	Down
\checkmark	Security system	Surveon - rear rubbish	10.7Mbps	60	0	0
\checkmark	Security system	Samsung SNV-7080	2.01Mbps	15	3	50
$\mathbf{\Lambda}$	Security system	Ganz ZN-C2M Dining Area	864kbps	13	0	0
	Security system	Sony SNC-CH120-Sales Marketin	2.77Mbps	1	0	0
	Security system	Vista VK2-1080VRD S/w	5.29Mbps	1	0	0
	-				-	_

5.) One only needs to view the network "**Drops**", on the selected cameras. So, hide the **Bitrate**, **Stalls** and **Down** time:

Bitrate	
Drops	
Stalls	
Down	

The figure below shows packet loss on the "Security System Surveon" camera. It indicates 60 packets being dropped at around 10 am:





Index

Access Rights, 164 Camera Access Rights, 164 General Site Access Rights, 166 Create other Users, 166 Export Data, 166 PTZ Tour, 166 Reset Camera Tamper, 166 Inputs, Outputs and Monitors Access Rights, 166 Adjacent Camera Mapping, 222 Description, 222 Page Manager, 226 Setup, 223 Map Cameras, 224 Setup Interface Guide, 223 Analogue Matrix, 179 Analytics, 80, 85 Accessing Video Analytics, 85 Activity Triggred Camera Recording, 73 Adding Video Analytics, 86 Analytics Configuration, 89 Analytics Licenses, 125 Analytics Test, 91 Basic, Intermediate & Advanced Analytics, 87, 100 Advanced Settings, 103 Advanced Property Editor, 104 Default Counting Overlay, 104 Default Paths Overlay, 104 Flare Suppression, 104 Image Stabilisation, 104 **Object Classifier**, 104 Database, 105 Size Filter, 103 Source Size, 103 Tracking Point, 103 Use Colour, 104 Basic Settings, 101 Background Model, 101 Mask, 101 Sensitivity, 101 Calibration Settings, 107 Advanced Calibration, 108 Angle, 108 Aspect Ratio, 108 Configuration, 108 Height, 108 Basic Calibration, 107 Depth of Field of Image, 107 Triggers, 108

Add a Trigger, 108 Advanced Area Triggers, 109 Enter/Exit Trigger, 110 Filter Objects, 110, 112 Loitering (Time in Area), 110 Stop in Area Trigger, 110 Advanced Line Triggers, 111 Filter Objects, 112 Line Counter, 111 Line Trigger, 111 Basic Line Trigger, 109 Basic Presence Trigger, 109 Speed Triggers, 112 **Counting Analytics**, 88 Motion Database, 123 Queue Length Analytics, 87, 113 Triggers, 113 Zones, 113 Still Object Analytics, 87, 113 Background based Algorithm, 116 Legacy Algorithm, 114 Zones, 116, See Basic VMD, Zones Top Down Head Tracker, 87 Video Motion Detection (VMD), 88 Basic VMD, 94 Adaptive Noise Suppression, 96 Background Model, 95 Day/Night Settings, 96 Noise Suppression, 96 Triggers, 96, 119 Zones, 94 Smart VMD, 97 Advanced Settings, 98 Background Noise, 98, 99 Flares, 99 Profiles, 99 Threshold, 99 Day/Night Settings, 100 Zones, 98, See Basic VMD, Zones Archiving Archive Video Manually, 138 Archiving Profile, 31 Scheduled Archives, 138 Cameras, 59 Access Rights, 76 Adding Cameras, 60 Activity Recording, 73 Add/Edit a Video Feed, 63 H264, 64



JPEG, 63 Multicast, 64 Camera Connection, 60 Copy/Paste New Camera, 74 Discovered Mode, 75 Sequential Mode, 74 Covert Camera, 62 Edge Recordings, Review Setup, 68 Enable Analytics Feed, 65 Encryption. See Secure Camera Connection and Control General Settings, 62 I/O Setup, 65 PTZ, Configure Settings, 69 Scheduled Recording, 73 Scheduled Recording Configure Schedule, 73 Serial Ports, Configure, 68 Edit Camera, 75 Privacy Zones, 78 Reference Images, 81 Secure Camera Connection and Control, 59 **Configure Servers** Manage Units, 49 **Open Configure Servers**, 49 Server Setup Audio, 54 Backup, 56 Base-Stations, 57 Email Setup, 54 Gateway, 55 General, 52 Server Heartbeat, 55 User Recordings, 58 Create and Manage Sites, 19 Databases, 127 Alerts, 129 Edit Database, 129 Import Database, 130 Manage Storage, 129 Network Drive, 130 Max Recording Limit, 128 New Database, 127 Slice, 128 Write Policy, 128 Diagnostics Audit Server, 51 Audit Site, 241 Forensic Tool. See Forensic Tool Server/Client Statistics, 253 Sherlocks, 52, 246 Events, 141 Meta-Database, 141 System Events, 142 005-20200528-250

Actions, 153 Call Base Station, 157 Control Integrated Device, 156 Control Output, 156 Control PTZ, 156 Control Virtual Input, 155 Play Audio Clip, 160 Record Camera, 153 Send Email, 159 General Setup, 144 Navigate to System Events, 143 New Events Window, 143 Resources, 160 Triggers, 145 Camera Tamper Trigger, 150 Integrated Device Triggers, 149 Standard Triggers, 146 Filter Period, 148 When and While, 146, 147 Trigger Template, 149 Failover, 211 Failover Example, 213 Failover Model, 211 Failover Setup, 215 Add Failover Server to the Site, 216 Client Settings, 218 Configure Failover Network Interface, 216 Define Global Failover Settings, 217 Failover Database, 217 Failover Insert Database, 217 Install Failover Server Software, 215 Requirements, 215 Site Master Settings, 218 Licensing, 212 Limitations, 213 Minimise Failover Loss, 213 Rcommendations, 213 System Restore, 219 Restore Site Master Recording Server, 219 Restore Site Slave Recording Server, 219 Forensic Tool, 262 Data Values, 263 Date/Time Selection, 263 Forensic Graph, 264 Interpreting the Graph Data, 270 Quick View, 269 Select View, 266 GUI, 228 Cameras Tab, 260 Command Line Options, 232 Add Multiple GUIs, 233 Connect Client to Alarm Gateway, 232 Set Max Number of Reviewable Cameras, 233 Set Number of Monitors, 232



View Legacy Archive Viewer, 233 Menu Bar Guide, 239 Edit Menu, 239 Enterprise Manager Edit Menu, 240 General Edit Menu, 239 File Menu, 239 Archive Viewer, 239 Enterprise Manager, 239 Open Site, 239 Open Site List, 239 Help Menu, 253 About, 253 Access Manuals, 253 Enable Support User, 253 Server/Client Statistics, 253 Settings Menu, 246, 247 Connect To Alarm Gateway, 247 DPI Scaling, 248 Language Settings, 247 Number of Forms, 247 OpenGL, 248, 249 Relay Double Click Action, 247 Switch Alarm Display, 247 Video Display, 249 Add Keyboard to Base-Station, 252 Alarms, 253 Aspect Ratio, 249 Default Event Notifications, 250 Deinterlacing, 249 Fastest Scaling, 249 Live Time Format, 249 Live Video Resolution, 249 Maximum Live Streams, 249 Old-style Mouse Handling, 249 Performance, 251 Pixel Shaders, 249 **Resource Panel Location**, 249 Show Recording, 249 Show Review Button, 249 Show Time, 249 Source Pixel Aspect Ratio, 249 Switch Display Settings for New Tabs, 250 Site Menu, 240 Audit Trails, 241 Custom Event Notifications, 241 Fetch Report, 242 Setup, 242 Tools Menu, 246 Licenses, 246 Sherlocks, 246 Video Wall Menu, 243 Layout, 243 Create New, 243

Manage, 243 Overwrite, 243 Recall, 243 Resize, 244 Sequences, 244 Recall Sequence, 245 Sequence Editor, 244 Sequence Manager, 244 Switch Display Settings for this Tab, 245 View Menu, 240 Minimise GUI, 231 Monitors Tab, 255 Send Text Message when Alarms are Received, 234 Status Bar, 254 Supported GUI Languages, 231 Inputs/Outputs, 133 Analogue, 133 Configure Access Rights, 166 Network, 134 Installation Anti-Virus, 11 Hardware Requirements, 8 Installation Wizard, 13 Performance Wizard, 14 Requirements/Restrictions, 7 Routing/Port Requirements, 9 Supported Operating Systems, 7 Integration Devices, 174 Important Considerations, 177 Recording Continuous, with Device Markers, 177 Device Triggered, 177 Integration Database, 174 Database Procedures, 175 Initialise Database, 174 New Integration Database, 174 **Integration Devices Panel**, 175 Configuration Tabs, 177 Device Events, 177 General, 177 **Object Configuration**, 177 Object Groups, 177 **Object Properties**, 177 Navigate To, 175 New Device, 176 Keyboards, 173 Add to Base-Station, 173, 252 Add to Recording Server, 173 Licensing, 16 Licensing from a Local Unit, 16 Pack File, 16 Product Key, 16 Licensing from a Remote Unit, 17



Trial License, 16 Master. See Master Unit Monitors, 162 Access Rights, 163 Add a Monitor, 163 VGA Monitor, 163 XP Monitor, 163 Licensing, 162 Monitors Tab, 255 Monitors Tab on a Base Station, 162 Run on Startup, 162 Video Wall Software, 162 Multicast, 35, 64 PTZ, 69 Control Panel, 71 General Settings, 69 Home Position, 69 Priority Control, 72 Procedures, 71 PTZ Tours, 70 Patterns, 71 Presets, 70 Zoom Speed, 69 Reports, 188 Add Schedule, 188 Create New, 188, 189 Fetch Report, 188, 242 **Report Types** Cameras, 190 Database Usage, 191 Disks, 192 Environment, 194 Events, 195 File System, 196 Hardware, 196 License Features, 197 Licenses, 198 NTP Queries, 199 Reboots, 200 Recording Times, 201 Software, 202 System, 203 System Setup, 204 Unit Up-Time, 205 User Defined, 206 VMX Counters, 207 VMX Temperature, 208

Windows, 208 **Resource Panel**, 181 Configure Location, 249 Scheduled Recording, 136 Schedules, 132 Create Schedule, 73, 132 Site Actions, 184 Action Types, 185 Add to Event, 185 Add to Schedule, 185 Create New, 184 Sites, 19 Enterprise Manager, 19 Master Unit, 19 Technical Alarms, 167 Alarm Types, 169 Base-Station, 169 Camra Faults, 169 Database, 169 Disk, 170 Environment, 170 Failover, 170 Frame-Grabber, 170 Gateway Alarm, 170 Integration Database, 170 Meta-Database, 170 Network Connectivity, 170 Network I/O, 170 **Reboots**, 170 Recording Failure, 170 Recording Period, 170 Scheduled Archive, 170 Server Monitoring, 170 Software Failure, 170 Test, 170 Configure Alarm, 169 General Settings, 167 Call Base-Station, 167 Configure Email, 168 **Operating System Support**, 170 Users Camera Access Rights, 76 Create New User, 39 LDAP, 40 Non-Administrative Users, 41 Site Resource Access Rights, 164 Virtual Inputs, 172